



# Contents A-Z

## OWNER'S MANUAL.

MINI.





## **MINI** **Owner's Manual for Vehicle**

Thank you for choosing a MINI.

The more familiar you are with your vehicle, the better control you will have on the road. We therefore strongly suggest:

Read this Owner's Manual before starting off in your new MINI. Also use the Integrated Owner's Manual in your vehicle. It contains important information on vehicle operation that will help you make full use of the technical features available in your MINI. The manual also contains information designed to enhance operating reliability and road safety, and to contribute to maintaining the value of your MINI.

Any updates made after the editorial deadline can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Handbook for Vehicle.

Get started now. We wish you driving fun and inspiration with your MINI

The MINI team

© 2015 Bayerische Motoren Werke  
Aktiengesellschaft  
Munich, Germany  
Reprinting, including excerpts, only with the written  
consent of BMW AG, Munich.  
US English VI/15, 07 15 490  
Printed on environmentally friendly paper, bleached  
without chlorine, suitable for recycling.

# CONTENTS

The fastest way to find information on a particular topic or item is by using the index, refer to page [236](#).

[6](#) Information

## AT A GLANCE

[14](#) Cockpit  
[18](#) Onboard monitor  
[26](#) Voice activation system  
[29](#) Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle

## CONTROLS

[34](#) Opening and closing  
[49](#) Adjusting  
[58](#) Transporting children safely  
[62](#) Driving  
[75](#) Displays  
[94](#) Lights  
[99](#) Safety  
[115](#) Driving stability control systems  
[119](#) Driving comfort  
[136](#) Climate control  
[143](#) Interior equipment  
[145](#) Digital compass  
[151](#) Storage compartments

## DRIVING TIPS

[158](#) Things to remember when driving  
[161](#) Loading  
[164](#) Saving fuel

## MOBILITY

[174](#) Refueling  
[176](#) Fuel  
[178](#) Wheels and tires  
[193](#) Engine compartment  
[195](#) Engine oil  
[198](#) Coolant  
[200](#) Maintenance  
[202](#) Replacing components  
[214](#) Breakdown assistance  
[220](#) Care

## REFERENCE

[226](#) Technical data  
[231](#) Appendix  
[236](#) Everything from A to Z

# INFORMATION

## USING THIS OWNER'S MANUAL

The fastest way to find information on a particular topic is by using the index.

An initial overview of the vehicle is provided in the first chapter.

### Updates made after the editorial deadline

Any updates made after the editorial deadline can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Handbook for Vehicle.

### User's manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication

The topics Navigation, Entertainment, Communication and the short commands of the voice activation system can be retrieved on the Control Display via the Integrated Owner's Handbook.


### Additional sources of information

A dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop will be glad to answer additional questions at any time.

Information about MINI, e.g., on technology, is available on the Internet: [www.miniusa.com](http://www.miniusa.com)

## SYMBOLS AND DISPLAYS

### Symbols in the Owner's Manual


 Indicates precautions that must be followed precisely in order to avoid the possibility of personal injury and serious damage to the vehicle.

← Marks the end of a specific item of information.

"..." Identifies Control Display texts used to select individual functions.

>...< Verbal instructions to use with the voice activation system..

>>...<< Identifies the answers generated by the voice activation system.

 Refers to measures that can be taken to help protect the environment.

### Action steps

Action steps to be carried out are presented as numbered list. The steps must be carried out in the defined order.


1. First action step.
2. Second action step.

### Enumerations

Enumerations without mandatory order or alternative possibilities are presented as list with bullet points.

- ▷ First possibility.
- ▷ Second possibility.

### Symbols on vehicle components

 Indicates that you should consult the relevant section of this Owner's Manual for information on a particular part or assembly.

## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This Owner's Manual describes all models and all standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series. Therefore, in this Owner's Manual, we also describe and illustrate features that are not available in your vehicle, e.g., because of the se-

lected optional features or the country-specific version.

This also applies to safety-related functions and systems.

The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

For any options and equipment not described in this Owner's Handbook, refer to the Supplementary Owner's Handbooks.

On right-hand drive vehicles, some controls are arranged differently from what is shown in the illustrations.

## STATUS OF THE OWNER'S MANUAL

### Basic information

The manufacturer of your vehicle pursues a policy of constant development that is conceived to ensure that our vehicles continue to embody the highest quality and safety standards. In rare cases, therefore, the features described in this Owner's Manual may differ from those in your vehicle.

### Updates made after the editorial deadline

Any updates made after the editorial deadline can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Handbook for Vehicle.

## OWN SAFETY

### Manufacturer

The manufacturer of this MINI is Bayerische Motoren Werke Aktionengesellschaft, BMW AG.

### Warranty

Your vehicle is technically configured for the operating conditions and registration require-

ments applying in the country of first delivery also known as homologation. If your vehicle is to be operated in a different country it might be necessary to adapt your vehicle to potentially differing operating conditions and permit requirements. If your vehicle does not comply with the homologation requirements in a certain country you may not be able to lodge warranty claims for your vehicle there. Further information on warranty is available from a dealer's service center.

### Maintenance and repairs

Advanced technology, e.g., the use of modern materials and high-performance electronics, requires suitable maintenance and repair work.

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that you entrust corresponding procedures to a MINI dealer's service center.

If you choose to use another service facility, the manufacturer of your vehicle recommends use of a facility that performs work, e.g. maintenance and repair, according to MINI specifications with properly trained personnel, referred to in this Owner's Manual as "another qualified service center or repair shop".

If work is performed improperly, e.g. maintenance and repair, there is a risk of subsequent damage and related safety risks.

### Parts and accessories

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends the use of parts and accessory products approved by the manufacturer of the MINI.

Approved parts and accessories, and advice on their use and installation are available from a MINI dealer's service center.

MINI parts and accessories were tested by the manufacturer of the MINI for their safety and suitability in MINI vehicles.

The manufacturer of your vehicle warrants genuine MINI parts and accessories.

The manufacturer of your vehicle does not evaluate whether each individual product from

another manufacturer can be used with MINI vehicles without presenting a safety hazard, even if a country-specific official approval was issued. The manufacturer of your vehicle does not evaluate whether these products are suitable for MINI vehicles under all usage conditions.

### California Proposition 65 Warning

California laws require us to state the following warning:

Engine exhaust and a wide variety of automobile components and parts, including components found in the interior furnishings in a vehicle, contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash your hands after handling. Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water.

### Service and warranty

We recommend that you read this publication thoroughly. Your vehicle is covered by the following warranties:

- ▷ New Vehicle Limited Warranty.
- ▷ Rust Perforation Limited Warranty.
- ▷ Federal Emissions System Defect Warranty.
- ▷ Federal Emissions Performance Warranty.
- ▷ California Emission Control System Limited Warranty.

Detailed information about these warranties is listed in the Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models or in the Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

Your vehicle has been specifically adapted and designed to meet the particular operating conditions and homologation requirements in your country and continental region in order to deliver the full driving pleasure while the vehicle is operated under those conditions. If you wish to operate your vehicle in another country or region, you may be required to adapt your vehicle to meet different prevailing operating conditions and homologation requirements. You should also be aware of any applicable warranty limitations or exclusions for such country or region. In such case, please contact Customer Relations for further information.

### Maintenance

Maintain the vehicle regularly to sustain the road safety, operational reliability and the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Specifications for required maintenance measures:

- ▷ MINI Maintenance system
- ▷ Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models
- ▷ Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models

If the vehicle is not maintained according to these specifications, this could result in serious damage to the vehicle. Such damage is not covered by the MINI New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

### DATA MEMORY

Many electronic components on your vehicle are equipped with data memories that temporarily or permanently store technical information about the condition of the vehicle, events and faults. This technical information generally records the state of a component, a module, a system or the environment:

- ▷ Operating mode of system components, fill levels for instance.



- ▷ Status messages for the vehicle and from its individual components, e.g., wheel rotation speed/vehicle speed, deceleration, transverse acceleration.
- ▷ Malfunctions and faults in important system components, e.g., lights and brakes.
- ▷ Responses by the vehicle to special situations such as airbag deployment or engaging the stability control system.
- ▷ Ambient conditions, such as temperature.

This data is purely technical in nature and is used to detect and correct faults and to optimize vehicle functions. Motion profiles over routes traveled cannot be created from this data. When service offerings are used, e.g., repair services, service processes, warranty claims, quality assurance, this technical information can be read out from the event and fault memories by employees of the dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop, including the manufacturer, using special diagnostic tools. You can obtain further information there if you need it. After an error is corrected, the information in the fault memory is deleted or overwritten on a continuous basis.

With the vehicle in use there are situations where you can associate these technical data with individuals if combined with other information, e.g., an accident report, damage to the vehicle, eye witness accounts — possibly with the assistance of an expert.

Additional functions that are contractually agreed with the customer - such as vehicle emergency locating - you can transmit certain vehicle data from the vehicle.

## EVENT DATA RECORDER EDR

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder EDR. The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in under-

standing how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- ▷ How various systems in your vehicle were operating.
- ▷ Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were fastened.
- ▷ How far, if at all, the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal.
- ▷ How fast the vehicle was traveling.

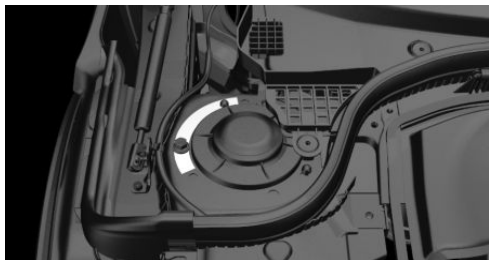
These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a nontrivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data, e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location, are recorded.

However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

## VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER



The vehicle identification number can be found in the engine compartment.

The vehicle identification number can also be found behind the windshield.

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from <http://www.safercar.gov>

### For Canadian customers

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may telephone the toll-free hotline 1-800-333-0510. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from <http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety>.

## REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS

### For US customers

The following only applies to vehicles owned and operated in the US.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration NHTSA, in addition to notifying MINI of North America, LLC, P.O. Box 1227, Westwood, New Jersey 07675-1227, Telephone 1-800-831-1117.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign.

However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or MINI of North America, LLC.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to <http://www.safercar.gov>; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 400 Seventh Street, SW., Washington, DC 20590.





**WATCH ME.**

**AT A GLANCE**

**CONTROLS**

**DRIVING TIPS**

**MOBILITY**

**REFERENCE**

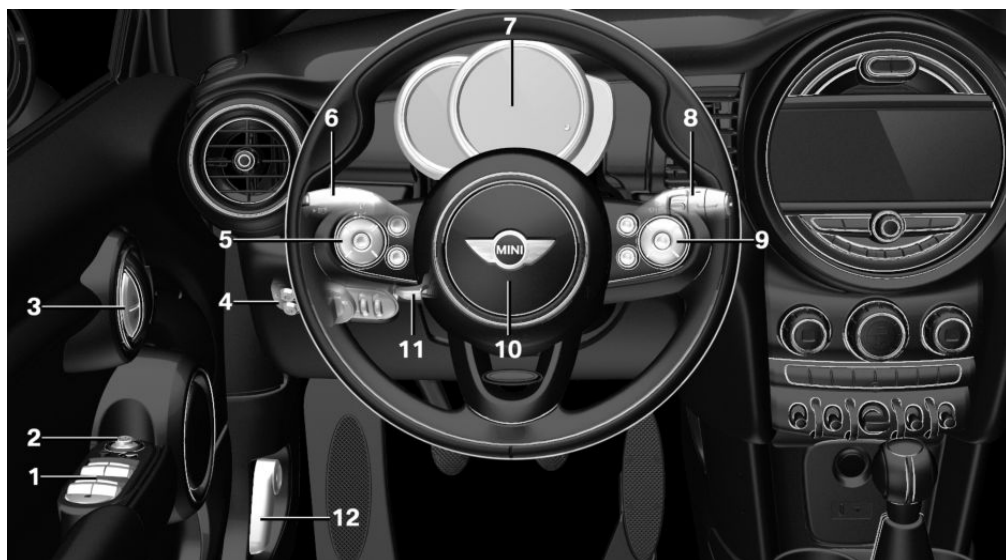
# COCKPIT

## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not

necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## ALL AROUND THE STEERING WHEEL



1 Power windows 44

2 Exterior mirror operation 55

3 Central locking system 40

4 Lights



Front fog lights 97



Lights off

Daytime running lights 96



Parking lights 94



Low beams 94



Automatic headlight control 95

























Corner-illuminating lights 96

High-beam Assistant 96

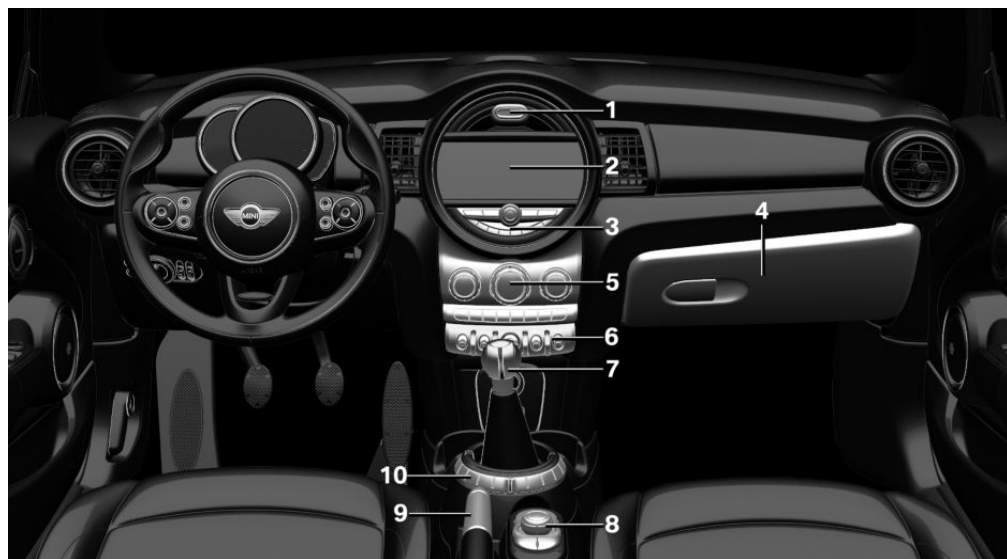











Instrument lighting 97

5 Steering wheel buttons, left

- |   |  |   |   |
|---|--|---|---|
|  | Camera-based cruise control on/off <a href="#">119</a>                   |  | Cleaning windows <a href="#">69</a>     |
|  | Cruise control on/off <a href="#">124</a>                                |  | Rear window wiper <a href="#">69</a>    |
|  | Store speed <a href="#">119</a> , <a href="#">124</a>                    |  | Cleaning rear window <a href="#">69</a> |
|  | Pause, continue cruise control <a href="#">119</a> , <a href="#">124</a> |   |   |
|  | Set speed <a href="#">119</a> , <a href="#">124</a>                      |   |   |
|  | Reduce distance <a href="#">119</a>                                      |   |   |
|  | Increase distance <a href="#">119</a>                                    |   |   |
- 6** Steering column stalk, left
- |   |  |  |  |
|---|--|--|--|
|    | Turn signal <a href="#">67</a>                   |  |  |
|    | High beams, headlight flasher <a href="#">67</a> |  |  |
|    | High-beam Assistant <a href="#">96</a>           |  |  |
|   | Roadside parking lights <a href="#">95</a>       |  |  |
|  | On-board computer <a href="#">84</a>             |  |  |
- 7** Instrument cluster [75](#)
- 8** Steering column stalk, right
- |   |                                      |  |  |
|---|--------------------------------------|--|--|
|  | Windshield wipers <a href="#">68</a> |  |  |
|  | Rain sensor <a href="#">68</a>       |  |  |
- 9** Steering wheel buttons, right
- |   |  |  |  |
|---|--|--|--|
|  | Voice activation <a href="#">26</a>      |  |  |
|  | Telephone                                |  |  |
|  | Confirm the selection <a href="#">84</a> |  |  |
|  | Move selection up <a href="#">84</a>     |  |  |
|  | Move selection down <a href="#">84</a>   |  |  |
|  | Increase volume                          |  |  |
|  | Reduce volume                            |  |  |
- 10** Horn
- 11** Adjust the steering wheel [57](#)
- 12** Unlock hood [194](#)

## ALL AROUND THE CENTER CONSOLE









- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>1  Hazard warning system <a href="#">214</a></p> <p>2  Intelligent Safety <a href="#">108</a></p>  | <p> Start/stop the engine and switch the ignition on/off <a href="#">62</a></p> <p> DSC Dynamic Stability Control <a href="#">129</a></p> <p> Head-up Display <a href="#">89</a></p> |
| <p>3 <a href="#">Control Display 18</a></p> <p>4 <a href="#">Radio/Multimedia</a></p> <p>5 <a href="#">Glove compartment 151</a></p> <p>6 <a href="#">Climate control 136</a></p>   | <p>7 <a href="#">Steptronic transmission selector lever 71</a><br/><a href="#">Manual transmission selector lever 71</a></p> <p>8 <a href="#">Controller with buttons 19</a></p> <p>9 <a href="#">Parking brake 66</a></p> <p>10 <a href="#">Driving Dynamics Control 117</a></p>   |
| <p>6  PDC Park Distance Control <a href="#">126</a></p> <p> Rearview camera <a href="#">129</a></p> <p> Parking assistant <a href="#">132</a></p> <p> Auto Start/Stop function <a href="#">64</a></p> |   |



## ALL AROUND THE ROOFLINER



- |   |  |   |   |  |                                    |
|---|--|---|---|--|------------------------------------|
| 1 |   | Emergency Request   | 4 |   | Ambient light <a href="#">98</a>   |
| 2 |   | Indicator lamp, front-seat pass. airbag <a href="#">101</a> | 5 |   | Glass sunroof <a href="#">46</a>   |
| 3 |  | Reading lights <a href="#">98</a>                           | 6 |  | Interior lights <a href="#">98</a> |

# ONBOARD MONITOR

## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## THE CONCEPT

The onboard monitor combines the functions of a multitude of switches. Thus, these functions can be operated from a central location.



### WARNING

Operating the integrated information system and communication devices while driving can distract from traffic. It is possible to lose control of the vehicle. There is risk of an accident. Only use the systems or devices when the traffic situation allows. If necessary stop and use the systems and devices while the vehicle is stationary. ◀

## CONTROL ELEMENTS AT A GLANCE

### Control elements



- 1 Control Display
- 2 Controller with buttons and, depending on the equipment version, with touchpad

### Control Display


#### Information

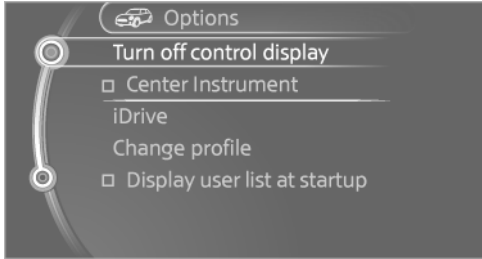
- ▶ To clean the Control Display, follow the care instructions.
- ▶ Do not place objects close to the Control Display; otherwise, the Control Display can be damaged.
- ▶ In the case of very high temperatures on the Control Display, e.g. due to intense solar radiation, the brightness may be reduced down to complete deactivation. Once the temperature is reduced, e.g. through shadow or climate control system, the normal functions are re-established.

### Switching on

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Press the controller.

## Switch off

1.  Press button.
2. "Turn off control display"



## Controller with navigation system

The buttons can be used to open the menus directly. The controller can be used to select menu items and enter the settings.

Some functions of the onboard monitor can be operated using the touchpad on the controller:

1. Turn.



2. Press.



3. Move in four directions.



## Buttons on controller

Press button	Function
MENU	Open the main menu.
RADIO	Opens the Radio menu.
MEDIA	Opens the Multimedia menu.
NAV	Opens the Navigation menu.
TEL	Opens the phone menu.
BACK	Displays the previous display.
OPTION	Opens the Options menu.

## Controller without navigation system

The buttons can be used to open the menus directly. The controller can be used to select menu items and enter the settings.

1. Turn.



2. Press.



3. Move in two directions.



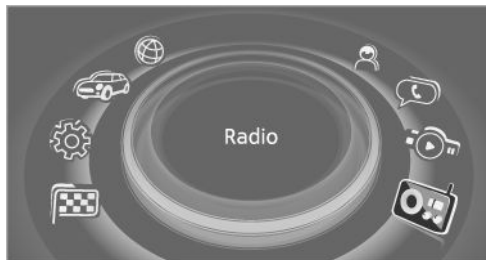
### Buttons on controller

Press button	Function
MENU	Open the main menu.
Audio	Open audio menu last listened to, switch between audio menus.
TEL	Opens the phone menu.
BACK	Open previous panel.
OPTION	Opens the Options menu.

## OPERATING CONCEPT

### Opening the main menu

 Press button.



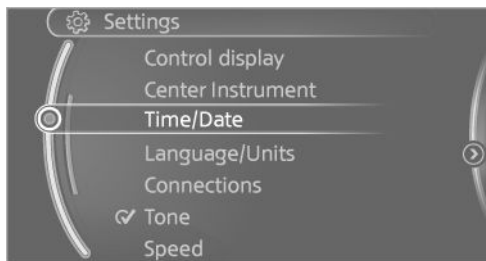
The main menu is displayed.

All onboard monitor functions can be called up via the main menu.

### Selecting menu items

Highlighted menu items can be selected.

1. Turn the controller until the desired menu item is highlighted.



2. Press the controller.

### Menu items in the Owner's Manual

In the Owner's Manual, menu items that can be selected are set in quotation marks, e.g., "Settings".

### Changing between panels

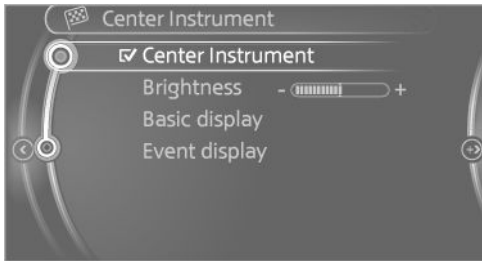
After a menu item is selected, e.g., "Radio", a new panel is displayed. Panels can overlap.

▷ Move the controller to the left.

Closes current display and shows previous display.

Reopens previous display by pressing BACK button. In this case, the current panel is not closed.

- ▶ Move the controller to the right.  
Opens new display on top of previous screen.



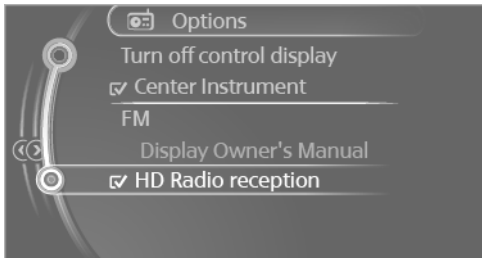
Arrows pointing to the left or right indicate that additional panels can be opened.

## Opening the Options menu



Press button.

The "Options" menu is displayed.



Additional options: move the controller to the right repeatedly until the "Options" menu is displayed.

## Options menu

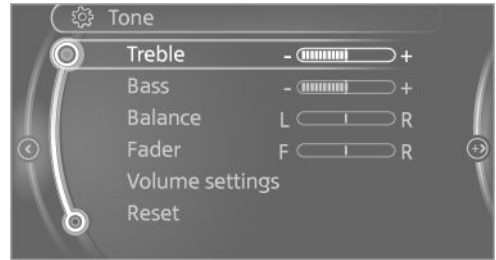
The "Options" menu consists of various areas:

- ▶ Screen settings, e.g., "Split screen".
- ▶ Control options for the selected main menu, e.g., for "Radio".
- ▶ If applicable, further operating options for the selected menu, e.g., "Store station".

## Changing settings

1. Select a field.

2. Turn the controller until the desired setting is displayed.



3. Press the controller.

## Activating/deactivating the functions

Several menu items are preceded by a check-box. It indicates whether the function is activated or deactivated. Selecting the menu item activates or deactivates the function.

Function is activated.

Function is deactivated.

## TOUCHPAD

Some functions of the onboard monitor can be operated using the touchpad on the controller:

### Selecting functions

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Touchpad"
3. Select the desired function.
  - ▶ "Speller": enter letters and numbers.
  - ▶ "Interactive map": viewing the interactive map.
  - ▶ "Audio feedback": pronounces entered letters and numbers.

### Entering letters and numbers

Entering letters requires some practice at the beginning. When entering, pay attention to the following:

- ▷ The system recognizes capital and lower case letters. For the input of upper/lower case letters and numbers, it may be necessary to switch to the corresponding input mode, e.g. when upper and lower case letters are written the same way. Switching between cases, numbers and letters, refer to page 25.
- ▷ Enter characters as they are displayed on the Control Display.
- ▷ Always enter associated characters, such as accents or periods so that the letter can be clearly recognized. Possible input depends on the set language. Where necessary, enter special characters via the controller.
- ▷ To delete a character, slide to the left on the touchpad.
- ▷ To enter a blank space, slide to the right in the center of the touchpad.
- ▷ To enter a hyphen, slide to the right in the upper area of the touchpad.
- ▷ To enter an underscore, swipe to the right in the lower area of the touchpad.

### Operating the interactive map

The interactive map in the navigation system can be moved via the touchpad.

Function	Controls
Interactive map.	Swipe into respective direction.
Enlarge/shrink interactive map.	Drag in or out on the touchpad with fingers.
Display menu.	Tap once.



### Changing settings

You may change control display settings via touchpad. Swipe left or right accordingly.

## EXAMPLE: SETTING THE CLOCK

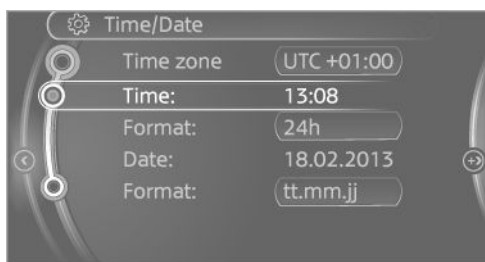
### Setting the clock

On the Control Display:

1.  Press button. The main menu is displayed.
2. Turn the controller until  "Settings" is highlighted, and then press the controller.



3. If necessary, move the controller to the left to display "Time/Date".
4. Turn the controller until "Time/Date" is highlighted, and then press the controller.
5. Turn the controller until "Time:" is highlighted, and then press the controller.



6. Turn the controller to set the hours and press the controller.
7. Turn the controller to set the minutes and press the controller.

## STATUS INFORMATION

### Status field



The following information is displayed in the status field at the top right:

- ▷ Time.
- ▷ Current entertainment source.
- ▷ Sound output, on/off.
- ▷ Wireless network reception strength.
- ▷ Phone status.
- ▷ Traffic bulletin reception.










### Status field symbols



The symbols are grouped as follows.

#### Radio symbols







Symbol	Meaning
	HD Radio station is being received.
	Satellite radio is switched on.

#### Telephone symbols


Symbol	Meaning
	Incoming or outgoing call.
	Missed call.
	Wireless network reception strength. Symbol flashes: network search.
	Wireless network is not available.
	Bluetooth is switched on.
	Roaming is active.
	Text message was received.
	Check the SIM card.
	SIM card is blocked.

Symbol	Meaning
	SIM card is missing.
	Enter PIN.

#### Entertainment symbols

Symbol	Meaning
	DVD changer.
	Music collection.
	Gracenote® database.
	AUX-IN port.
	USB audio interface.
	Mobile phone audio interface.

#### Additional symbols

Symbol	Meaning
	Spoken instructions are turned off.

## SPLIT SCREEN

### General information

Additional information can be displayed on the right side of the split screen, e.g., information from the on-board computer.

In the divided screen view, the so-called split screen, this information remains visible even when you change to another menu.


### Switching the split screen on and off

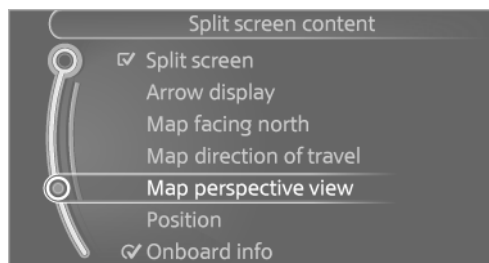
On the Control Display:

1.  Press button.
2. "Split screen"

## Selecting the display

On the Control Display:

1.  Press button.
2. "Split screen"
3. Move the controller until the split screen is selected.
4. Press the controller or select "Split screen content".
5. Select the desired menu item.





## PROGRAMMABLE MEMORY BUTTONS

### General information

The onboard monitor functions can be stored on the programmable memory buttons and called up directly, e.g., radio stations, navigation destinations, phone numbers and menu entries.

Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

### Saving a function

1. Highlight function via the onboard monitor.
2. ... Press and hold the desired button, until a signal sounds.

### Running a function

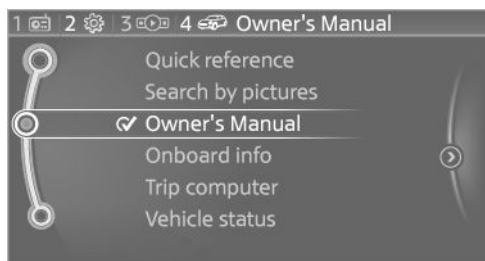
1. ... Press button.

The function will work immediately. This means, e.g., that the number is dialed when a phone number is selected.

## Displaying the button assignment

Touch buttons with bare fingers. Do not wear gloves or use objects.

The key assignment is displayed at top edge of screen.



## Deleting the button assignments

1. Press buttons 1 and 6 simultaneously for approx. five seconds.
2. "OK"

## DELETING PERSONAL IN THE VEHICLE

### The concept

Depending on the usage, the vehicle saves personal data, such as stored radio stations. These personal data can be permanently deleted via the onboard monitor.

### General information

Depending on the equipment package, the following data can be deleted:

- ▷ Personal Profile settings.
- ▷ Stored radio stations.
- ▷ Stored Favorites buttons.
- ▷ Travel and on-board computer information.



- ▷ Music collection.
- ▷ Navigation, e.g. stored destinations.
- ▷ Phone book.
- ▷ Online data, e.g. Favorites, cookies.
- ▷ Voice notes
- ▷ Login accounts.


Altogether, the deletion of the data can take up to 30 minutes.

### Functional requirement

Data can only be deleted while stationary.

### Deleting data

Heed and follow the instructions on the Control Display.



1. Switch on the ignition.
2.  "Settings"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Delete all personal data"
5. "Continue"
6. "OK"

## ENTERING LETTERS AND NUMBERS

### General information

On the Control Display:

1. Turn the controller: select letters or numbers.
2. Select additional letters or numbers if needed.
3. "OK": confirm the entry.

Symbol	Function
	Press the controller: delete the letter or number.
	Press the controller for an extended period: delete all letters or numbers.

### Switching between cases, letters and numbers

Depending on the menu, you can switch between entering upper and lower case, letters and numbers:

Symbol	Function
<b>A<sup>B</sup>C</b>	Enter the letters.
1@+	Enter the numbers.
abc or <b>ABC</b>	Tip controller up.

### Without navigation system

@<sup>A</sup> A<sup>a</sup> a<sup>@</sup> Select symbol.

### Entry comparison

Entering names and addresses: choice is narrowed down with every letter entered and letters may be added automatically.

Entries are continuously compared with data stored in the vehicle.

- ▷ Only those letters are offered during input for which data is available.
- ▷ Target search: names of locations may be entered in languages available through Control Display.

# VOICE ACTIVATION SYSTEM

## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## THE CONCEPT

- ▷ Most functions displayed on the Control Display can be operated by voice commands via the voice activation system. The system supports you with announcements during input.
- ▷ Functions that can only be used when the vehicle is stationary cannot be used via the voice activation system.
- ▷ The system uses a special microphone on the driver's side.
- ▷ ›...‹ Verbal instructions in the Owner's Manual to use with the voice activation system.


## REQUIREMENTS

Via the Control Display, set a language that is also supported by the voice activation system so that the spoken commands can be identified.


Set the language, refer to page [88](#).

## USING VOICE ACTIVATION

### Activating the voice activation system


1.  Press button on the steering wheel.
2. Wait for the signal.
3. Say the command.

A command that is recognized by the voice activation system is announced and displayed in the instrument cluster.

 This symbol in the instrument cluster indicates that the voice activation system is active.

If no other commands are available, operate the function via the onboard monitor.

### Terminating the voice activation system

 Briefly press the button on the steering wheel or ›Cancel‹.

## POSSIBLE COMMANDS

Most menu items on the Control Display can be voiced as commands.


The available commands depend on the menu that is currently displayed on the Control Display.

There are short commands for many functions.

You may select lists such as phone lists via voice activation. Read these lists out loud exactly as they show in the respective list.

### Having possible commands read aloud

You can have available commands read out loud for you: ›Voice commands‹

E. g. if the  "Settings" menu is displayed, the commands for the settings are read out loud.

## Executing functions using short commands

Execute functions on the main menu via short commands. It almost doesn't matter which menu item is selected, e.g., ›Vehicle status‹.

## Help dialog for the voice activation system

Calling up help dialog: ›Help‹


Additional commands for the help dialog:

- ▷ ›Help with examples‹: announces information about the current operating options and the most important commands for them.
- ▷ ›Help with voice activation‹: information about the principle of operation for the voice activation system is announced.

## ONE EXAMPLE: OPEN THE TONE SETTINGS


### Via the main menu

The commands of the menu items are spoken just as they are selected via the controller.

1. Turn on the Entertainment sound output if needed.
2.  Press button on the steering wheel.
3. ›Radio‹
4. ›Tone‹

### Via short command

The desired tone settings can also be started via a short command.


1. Turn on the Entertainment sound output if needed.
2.  Press button on the steering wheel.
3. ›Tone‹

## SETTING THE VOICE DIALOG

Set system to standard dialog or use a short version.

The short version of the voice dialog plays back short messages in abbreviated form.

On the Control Display:

1.  "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"
3. "Speech type:"
4. Select setting.

## ADJUSTING THE VOLUME

Turn the volume button during the spoken instructions until the desired volume is set.

- ▷ The volume remains constant even if the volume of other audio sources is changed.
- ▷ The volume is stored for the profile currently used.

## INFORMATION ON EMERGENCY REQUESTS

Do not use the voice activation system to initiate an Emergency Request. In stressful situations, the voice and vocal pitch can change. This can unnecessarily delay the establishment of a phone connection.

## ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS

- ▷ Say the commands, numbers, and letters smoothly and with normal volume, emphasis, and speed.
- ▷ Always say commands in the language of the voice activation system.
- ▷ Keep the doors, windows, and glass sunroof closed to prevent noise interference.

- ▶ Avoid making other noise in the vehicle while speaking.

# INTEGRATED OWNER'S MANUAL IN THE VEHICLE

## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## INTEGRATED OWNER'S MANUAL IN THE VEHICLE

The Integrated Owner's Manual can be displayed on the Control Display. It specifically describes features and functions found in the vehicle.

### Components of the Integrated Owner's Manual

The Integrated Owner's Manual consists of three parts, which offer various levels of information or possible access.

#### Quick Reference Guide

The Quick Reference Guide provides information how to operate the car, how to use basic vehicle functions or what to do in case of a breakdown. This information can also be displayed while driving.


#### Search by images

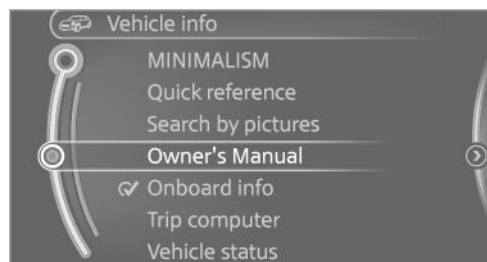
Image search provides information and descriptions. This is helpful when the terminology for a feature is not at hand.

### Owner's Manual

Search for information and descriptions by entering terms selected from the index.

#### Select components

1.  Press button.
2. Turn the controller: open "Vehicle info".
3. Press the controller.
4. Selecting desired range:
  - ▷ "Quick reference"
  - ▷ "Search by pictures"
  - ▷ "Owner's Manual"



### Leafing through the Owner's Manual

#### Page by page with link access

Turn the controller until the next or previous page is displayed.

#### Page by page without link access

Scroll through the pages directly while skipping the links.

Highlight the symbol once. Now simply press the controller to browse from page to page.



Scroll back.




Scroll forward.

## Context help - Owner's Manual to the temporarily selected function

You may open the relevant information directly.

### Opening via the onboard monitor

To move directly from the application on the Control Display to the options menu:

1.  Press button or move the controller to the right repeatedly until the "Options" menu is displayed.
2. "Display Owner's Manual"




### Opening when a Check Control message is displayed

Directly from the Check Control message on the Control Display:

"Display Owner's Manual"

### Changing between a function and the Owner's Manual

To switch from a function, e. g., radio, to the Owner's Manual on the Control Display and to alternate between the two displays:

1.  Press button or move the controller to the right repeatedly until the "Options" menu is displayed.
2. "Display Owner's Manual"
3. Select the desired page in the Owner's Manual.
4.  Press button again to return to last displayed function.
5.  Press button to return to the page of the Owner's Manual displayed last.


To alternate permanently between the last displayed function and the Owner's Manual repeat steps 4 & 5. Opens a new display every time.

## Programmable memory buttons


### General information

The Owner's Manual can be stored on the programmable memory buttons and called up directly.

### Storing

1. Select "Owner's Manual" via the onboard monitor.
2.  Press and hold the desired button, until a signal sounds.

### Executing

1.  Press button.  
The Owner's Manual is displayed immediately.





**HANDLE ME.**



**AT A GLANCE**

**CONTROLS**

**DRIVING TIPS**

**MOBILITY**

**REFERENCE**

# OPENING AND CLOSING

## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## REMOTE CONTROL/KEY

### General information

The vehicle is supplied with two remote controls with integrated key.

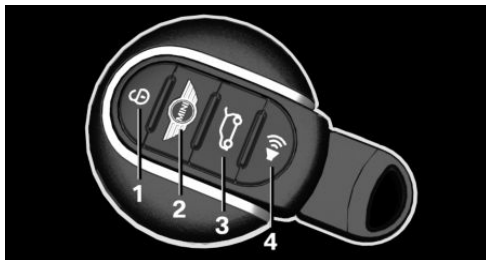
Every remote control holds a replaceable battery.

You may set the key functions depending on the optional features and country-specific version. For Settings, refer to page 42.

The vehicle stores personal settings for every remote control. Personal Profile, refer to page 36.

The remote controls hold information on required maintenance. Service data in the remote control, refer to page 200

### Overview



- 1 Unlocking
- 2 Locking
- 3 Unlock the tailgate
- 4 Panic mode

### Integrated key



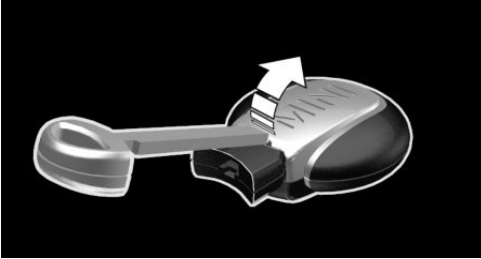
Press button, arrow 1, and remove the key, arrow 2.

The integrated key fits the driver's door lock.

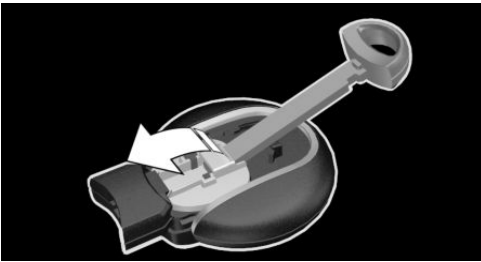
### Replacing the battery

1. Remove integrated key from remote control.
2. Slide the key into the opening and raise the cover.

The battery compartment is accessible.



3. Slide the key in the cover of the battery compartment and raise the cover.



4. Insert a battery of the same type with the positive side facing up.
5. Insert lid and cover.



Have old batteries disposed of by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop or take them to a collection point.

### New remote controls

New remote controls are available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

### Loss of the remote controls

The lost remote control can be blocked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

### Emergency detection of remote control

It is possible to switch on the ignition or start the engine in situations such as the following:

- ▷ Interference of radio transmission to remote control by external sources e.g., by radio masts.
- ▷ Empty battery in remote control.
- ▷ Interference from radio transmissions through mobile devices in close proximity to remote control.
- ▷ Interference of radio transmission by charger while charging items such as mobile devices in the vehicle.

A Check Control message is displayed if an attempt is made to switch on the ignition or start the engine.

### Starting the engine via emergency detection of the remote control



Steptronic transmission: if a corresponding Check Control message appears, hold the remote control, as shown, against the marked area on the steering column and press the Start/Stop button within 10 seconds while pressing the brake.

Manual transmission: if a corresponding Check Control message appears, hold the remote control, as shown, against the marked area on the steering column and press the Start/Stop button within 10 seconds while pressing the clutch.

## PERSONAL PROFILE

### The concept

Personal Profile provides three profiles, using which personal vehicle settings can be stored. Every remote control has one of these profiles assigned.

If the vehicle is unlocked using a remote control, the assigned personal profile will be activated. All settings stored in the profile are automatically applied.

If several drivers use their own remote control, the vehicle will adjust the personal settings during unlocking. These settings are also restored, if the vehicle has been used in the meantime by a person with a different remote control.

Changes to the settings are automatically saved in the personal profile.

Three personal profiles and a guest profile can be created.

### Adjusting

The settings for the following systems and functions are saved in the active profile. The scope of storable settings is country- and equipment-dependable.

- ▷ Unlocking and locking.
- ▷ Lights.
- ▷ Radio.
- ▷ Instrument cluster.
- ▷ Programmable memory buttons.
- ▷ Volumes, tone.
- ▷ Control Display.
- ▷ Climate control.
- ▷ Navigation.
- ▷ Park Distance Control PDC.
- ▷ Rearview camera
- ▷ Head-up Display.
- ▷ Driving Dynamics Control.
- ▷ Cruise control.


- ▷ Intelligent Safety.

### Profile management

#### Opening profiles

Regardless of the remote control in use a different profile may be activated.


On the Control Display:

1.  "Settings"
2. "Profiles"
3. Select a profile.
  - ▷ All settings stored in the called-up profile are automatically applied.
  - ▷ The called-up profile is assigned to the remote control being used at the time.
  - ▷ If the profile is already assigned to a different remote control, this profile will apply to both remote controls. It cannot be differentiated anymore between the settings for the two remote controls.

#### Renaming profiles

A personal name can be assigned to every profile to avoid confusion between the profiles.


On the Control Display:

1.  "Settings"
2. "Profiles"
  - The current profile is selected.
3. Open "Options".
4. "Rename current profile"

#### Resetting profiles

The settings of the active profile are reset to their default values.

On the Control Display:

1.  "Settings"
2. "Profiles"
  - The current profile is selected.

3. Open "Options".
4. "Reset current profile"


### Exporting profiles

Most settings of the active profile can be exported.

This can be helpful for securing and retrieving personal settings, before delivering the vehicle to a workshop, e.g. Profiles can be taken to another vehicle equipped with the Personal Profile function.

Export is made via the USB port to a USB device.


Popular file systems for USB devices are supported. FAT32 and exFAT are the recommended formats for profile export. Other formats may not support the export.

1.  "Settings"
2. "Profiles"
3. "Export profile"
4. "USB device"

### Importing profiles

Profiles stored on a USB device can be imported via the USB interface.

Existing settings are overwritten with the imported profile.

1.  "Settings"
2. "Profiles"
3. "Import profile"
4. "USB device"

### Using the guest profile

The guest profile is for individual settings that are saved in none of the three personal profiles.

This can be useful for drivers who are using the vehicle temporarily and do not have their own profile.


1.  "Settings"
2. "Profiles"

3. "Guest"
4. Adjust the settings.

The guest profile cannot be renamed. It is not assigned to the current remote control.

### Display profile list during start

The profile list can be displayed during each start to select the desired profile.

1.  "Settings"
2. "Profiles"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Display user list at startup"

## USING THE REMOTE CONTROL

### Information



#### WARNING

People or animals in the vehicle can lock the doors from the inside and lock themselves in. The vehicle can then not be opened from the outside. There is risk of injuries. Take the remote control along so that the vehicle can be opened from the outside. ◀

### Unlocking



Press button on the remote control.

- ▷ The vehicle is unlocked.
- ▷ The interior lights are switched on, when it is dark outside, the courtesy lamps are also switched on. This function is not available, if the interior lamps were switched off manually.
- ▷ The welcome lamps are switched on, if this function was activated.



On 3-door models:

Press button on the remote control twice in direct succession.

When the door is opened, the window is lowered more to make it easier to enter the vehicle.

You can set how the vehicle is to be unlocked. Create the settings, refer to page 42.

The alarm system, refer to page 43, is disarmed.

### Convenient opening



Press and hold this button on the remote control after unlocking.

The windows and the glass sunroof are opened, as long as the button on the remote control is pressed.

### Locking



#### WARNING

Unlocking from the inside is only possible with special knowledge.

If people must spend a longer time in the vehicle while it is very hot or cold outside, there is risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people in it. ◀

The driver's door must be closed.



Press button on the remote control.

The alarm system, refer to page 43, is armed.

If the vehicle horn honks twice when you lock the car, this means that the engine or ignition is still switched on. In this case, the engine or ignition must be switched off by means of the Start/Stop button.

### Switching on interior lights and courtesy lights



Press button on the remote control with the vehicle locked.

The courtesy lamps are only switched on when it is dark outside. This function is not available,

if the interior lamps were switched off manually.

If the button is pressed within 10 seconds of when the vehicle was locked Interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor of the anti-theft warning system, refer to page 44, are turned off. After locking, wait 10 seconds before pressing the button again.

### Panic mode

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.



Press button on the remote control for at least 3 seconds.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

### Unlocking the tailgate



Press button on the remote control for approx. 1 second.

The tailgate opens slightly, regardless of whether the vehicle was previously locked or unlocked.

To avoid locking it into the vehicle, do not place the remote control in the cargo area.

Depending on the features and the country version, it is also possible to have door unlocked. Create the settings, refer to page 42.

If the doors were not unlocked, the tailgate is locked again as soon as it closes.



#### CAUTION

Sharp-edged or pointed objects can hit the rear window and heat conductors while driving. There is risk of property damage. Cover the edges and ensure that pointed objects do not hit the rear window. ◀

### Malfunction

Remote control detection by the vehicle can among others be malfunctioning under the following circumstances:

- ▷ The battery of the remote control is discharged. Replace the battery, refer to page 34.
- ▷ Interference of the radio connection from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmit power.
- ▷ Shielding of the remote control due to metal objects.
- ▷ Interference of the radio connection from mobile phones or other electronic devices in direct proximity.

Do not transport the remote control together with metal objects or electronic devices.

In the case of a malfunction, unlock and lock the vehicle using the integrated key, refer to page 39.

### For US owners only

The transmitter and receiver units comply with part 15 of the FCC/Federal Communication Commission regulations. Operation is governed by the following:

FCC ID:

- ▷ LX8766S.
- ▷ LX8766E.
- ▷ LX8CAS.
- ▷ LX8CAS2.
- ▷ MYTCAS4.

Compliance statement:

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- ▷ This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- ▷ this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Any unauthorized modifications or changes to these devices could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

## WITHOUT REMOTE CONTROL

### From the outside



#### WARNING

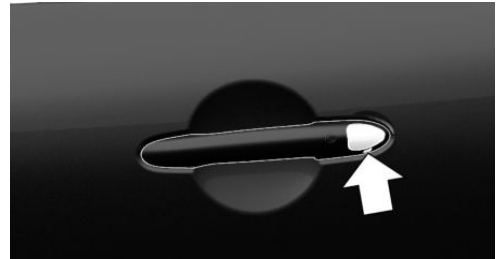
Unlocking from the inside is only possible with special knowledge.

If people must spend a longer time in the vehicle while it is very hot or cold outside, there is risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people in it. ◀



#### CAUTION

The door lock is permanently joined with the door. The door handle can be moved. When pulling the door handle with the integrated key inserted, paint or key can be damaged. There is risk of property damage. Remove the integrated key before pulling the outside door handle. ◀



Unlock or lock the driver's door via the door lock using the integrated key, refer to page 34. The other doors must be unlocked or locked from the inside.

To do this, unlock the lid from below with the integrated key, arrow, and remove.

### Alarm system

The alarm system is not armed if the vehicle is locked with the integrated key.

The alarm system is triggered when the door is opened, if the vehicle was unlocked via the door lock. In order to terminate this alarm, unlock vehicle with the remote control or switch


on the ignition, if needed, through emergency detection of the remote control.

## From the inside

### Locking and unlocking



 Press button.  
Vehicle is locked.

 Press button.  
The vehicle is unlocked.

Pressing the buttons for the central locking system locks and unlocks the doors and the tailgate when the front doors are closed, but they are not secured against theft.

The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.

In the event of a severe accident, the vehicle is automatically unlocked. The hazard warning system and interior lights come on.


### Unlocking and opening


Either unlock the doors together using the central locking system buttons and then pull the door handle above the armrest or pull the door handle on the door to open the door. The other doors remain locked.


## TAILGATE

### Information

To avoid locking it into the vehicle, do not place the remote control in the cargo area.

 **CAUTION**  
The tailgate swings back and up when it opens. There is risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing. ◀


 **WARNING**  
Body parts can be jammed when operating the tailgate. There is risk of injuries. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing. ◀

 **CAUTION**  
Sharp-edged or pointed objects can hit the rear window and heat conductors while driving. There is risk of property damage. Cover the edges and ensure that pointed objects do not hit the rear window. ◀

### Opening from the outside

When the tailgate is opened, make sure there is sufficient clearance to prevent damage.



- ▷ Unlock the vehicle and press the button on the tailgate.
- ▷  Press button on the remote control for approx. 1 second.

As the case may be, the doors are also unlocked. Unlocking with the remote control, refer to page 38.

The tailgate is unlocked and can be swung upward.



### Opening from the inside



With the vehicle is stationary, press the button in the driver's footwell.

### Closing



Recessed grips on the inside trim of the tailgate can be used to conveniently pull down the tailgate.

## COMFORT ACCESS

### The concept

The vehicle can be accessed without activating the remote control.

All you need to do is to have the remote control with you, such as in your pants pocket.

The vehicle automatically detects the remote control when it is in close proximity or in the car's interior.

Comfort Access supports the following functions:

- ▷ Unlocking/locking of the vehicle.
- ▷ Convenient closing.
- ▷ Separate unlocking of the tailgate.
- ▷ Start the engine.

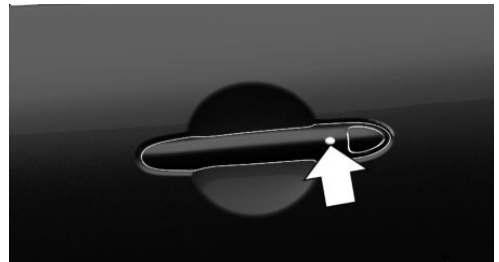
### Information

To avoid locking it into the vehicle, do not place the remote control in the cargo area.


### Functional requirements

- ▷ There are no sources of interference nearby.
- ▷ To lock the vehicle, the remote control must be located outside of the vehicle near the doors.
- ▷ The next unlocking and locking cycle is not possible until after approx. 2 seconds.
- ▷ The engine can only be started if the remote control is in the vehicle.

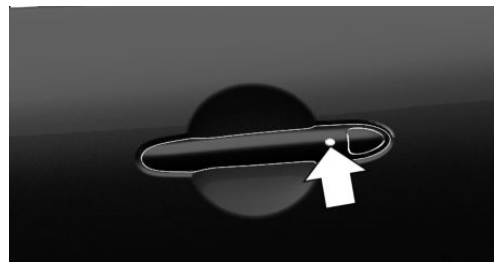
### Unlocking



On the driver's or front passenger's door handle, press the button.

This corresponds to pressing the remote control button: 

### Locking



On the driver's or front passenger's door handle, press the button.

This corresponds to pressing the remote control button: 

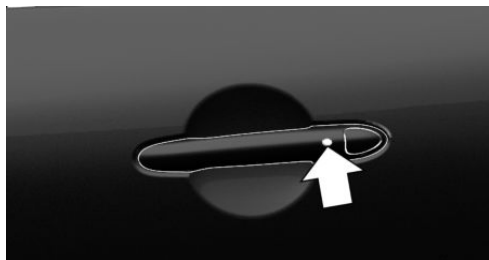
To save battery power, ensure that all power consumers are turned off before locking the vehicle.

### Convenient closing



#### WARNING

With convenient closing, body parts can be jammed. There is risk of injuries. Make sure that the area of movement of the doors is clear during convenient closing. ◀



Press and hold down the handle of the driver or the front seat passenger.

This corresponds to pressing the remote control button: 

In addition to locking, the windows and glass sunroof will be closed.

### Unlocking the tailgate separately

Press button on tailgate's exterior.

This corresponds to pressing the remote control button: 

The situation of the doors does not change.

### Malfunction

Remote control detection by the vehicle can among others be malfunctioning under the following circumstances:

- ▷ The battery of the remote control is discharged. Replace the battery, refer to page 34.

- ▷ Interference of the radio connection from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmit power.
- ▷ Shielding of the remote control due to metal objects.
- ▷ Interference of the radio connection from mobile phones or other electronic devices in direct proximity.

Do not transport the remote control together with metal objects or electronic devices.



In the case of a malfunction, unlock and lock the vehicle using the buttons of the remote control or using the integrated key, refer to page 39.

## ADJUSTING

### Unlocking

The settings are saved in the active profile. Personal Profile, refer to page 36.

### Doors

1.  "Settings"
2. "Doors/key"
3.  Select the symbol.
4. Select the desired function.
  - ▷ "Driver's door only"
 


Only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap are unlocked. Pressing again unlocks the entire vehicle.
  - ▷ "All doors"
 

The entire vehicle is unlocked.

### Tailgate


Depending on optional features and country version, this setting is not offered in some cases.

1.  "Settings"
2. "Doors/key"


3.  Select the symbol.
4. Select the desired function.
  - ▷ "Tailgate"  
Only the tailgate is unlocked.
  - ▷ "Tailgate + door(s)"  
The tailgate and the doors are unlocked.

## Locking

The settings are saved in the active profile. Personal Profile, refer to page 36.

1.  "Settings"
2. "Doors/key"
3. Select desired setting.
  - ▷ "Lock if no door is opened"  
The vehicle locks automatically after a short period of time if no door is opened.
  - ▷ "Lock after start driving"  
The vehicle locks automatically after you drive off.

## Confirmation signals from the vehicle

1.  "Settings"
2. "Doors/key"
3. Select desired setting.
  - ▷ "Acoustic sig. lock/unlock"  
Unlocking is signaled by one honk of the horn.
  - ▷ "Flash when lock/unlock"  
Unlocking is signaled by two flashes, locking by one.

# ALARM SYSTEM

## The concept

When the vehicle is locked, the vehicle alarm system responds to:

- ▷ Opening a door, the hood or the tailgate.
  - ▷ Movements in the vehicle interior.
  - ▷ Changes in the vehicle tilt, e. g., during attempts at stealing a wheel or when towing the car.
  - ▷ Disconnected battery voltage.
- The alarm system briefly signals tampering:
- ▷ Acoustic alarm.
  - ▷ By switching on the hazard warning system.
  - ▷ By flashing the daytime running lights.

## Arming and disarming the alarm system

When you lock or unlock the vehicle, either with the remote control or via the Comfort Access, the alarm system is armed or disarmed at the same time.

## Door lock and armed alarm system

The alarm system is triggered when the door is opened, when the vehicle is unlocked via the door lock.

Switch off the alarm, refer to page 44.

## Tailgate in case of armed alarm system

The tailgate can be opened even when the alarm system is armed.

After the tailgate is closed, it is locked and monitored again when the doors are locked. The hazard warning system flashes once.

## Panic mode

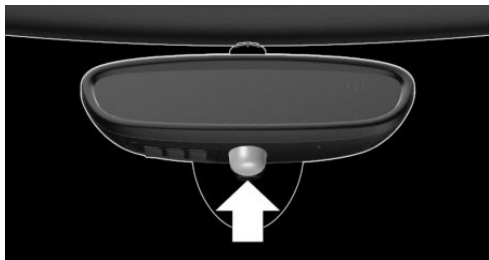
You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.



Press button on the remote control for at least 3 seconds.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

## Indicator lamp on the interior rearview mirror



- ▷ The indicator lamp flashes briefly every 2 seconds:  
The alarm system is armed.
- ▷ The indicator lamp flashes after locking:  
Doors, hood or tailgate are not correctly closed. Correctly closed access points are secured.  
After 10 seconds, the indicator lamp flashes continuously. Interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor are not active.  
When the still open access is closed, interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor will be switched on.
- ▷ The indicator lamp goes out after unlocking:  
The vehicle has not been tampered with.
- ▷ The indicator lamp flashes after unlocking until the engine ignition is switched on, but no longer than approx. 5 minutes:  
An alarm has been triggered.

### Tilt alarm sensor

The tilt of the vehicle is monitored.

The alarm system responds in situations such as attempts to steal a wheel or when the car is towed.

### Interior motion sensor

The windows and glass sunroof must be closed for the system to function properly.

## Avoiding unintentional alarms

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor can be switched off together, such as in the following situations:

- ▷ In automatic car washes.
- ▷ In duplex garages.
- ▷ During transport on trains carrying vehicles, at sea or on a trailer.
- ▷ With animals in the vehicle.

### Switching off the tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor



Press the remote control button again within 10 seconds as soon as the vehicle is locked.

The indicator lamp lights up for approx. 2 seconds and then continues to flash.

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor are turned off until the vehicle is locked again.

### Switching off the alarm

- ▷ Unlock vehicle with the remote control or switch on the ignition, if needed through emergency detection of remote control, refer to page 35.
- ▷ For Comfort Access: If you have the remote control with you, unlock vehicle using the button on the driver's side or passenger side door.

## POWER WINDOWS

### Information



#### WARNING

Unattended children or animals can move the vehicle and endanger themselves and traffic, e.g. with the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing of doors or windows.

- ▷ Shifting the selector lever into neutral.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Carry remote control along when exiting and lock the vehicle. ◀

## Overview



### On 5-door models



### On 3-door models




## Opening



- ▷  Press the button to the resistance point.  
The window opens while the switch is held.
- ▷  Press the switch beyond the resistance point.  
The window opens automatically. Pressing again stops the motion.

See also: Convenient opening, refer to page 38, via remote control.

## Closing


 **WARNING**

When operating the windows, body parts and objects can be jammed. There is risk of injuries or risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the windows is clear during opening and closing. ◀


- ▷  Pull the switch to the resistance point.  
The window closes while the switch is held.
- ▷  Pull the switch beyond the resistance point.  
The window closes automatically. Pulling again stops the motion.

See also: closing by means of Comfort Access, refer to page 42.

## Pinch protection system

 **WARNING**

When operating the windows, body parts and objects can be jammed. There is risk of injuries or risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the windows is clear during opening and closing. ◀


 **WARNING**

Accessories on the windows such as antennas can impact jam protection. There is risk of injuries. Do not install accessories in the area of movement of the windows. ◀

If closing force exceeds a specific margin as a window closes, closing is interrupted.

The window reopens slightly.

## Closing without the pinch protection system

 **WARNING**

When operating the windows, body parts and objects can be jammed. There is risk of injuries or risk of property damage. Make sure

that the area of movement of the windows is clear during opening and closing. ◀

In case of danger from the outside or if ice might prevent normal closing, proceed as follows:

1. Pull the switch past the resistance point and hold it there.

The pinch protection is limited and the window reopens slightly if the closing force exceeds a certain margin.

2. Pull the switch past the resistance point again within approx. 4 seconds and hold it there.

The window closes without jam protection.

### On 5-door models: safety switch

#### The concept

The opening and closing of the rear window can be blocked via the safety switch for the rear. This makes sense, for example, if children or animals are carried in the rear.

#### Information

##### WARNING

When operating the windows, body parts and objects can be jammed. There is risk of injuries or risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the windows is clear during opening and closing. ◀

In order to prevent uncontrolled closing of the windows, press the safety switch, e.g. if children or animals are carried in the rear.

### Overview



#### Switching on and off



Press button.

The LED lights up if the safety function is switched on.

## PANORAMIC GLASS SUNROOF

#### Information



##### WARNING

Body parts can be jammed on operating the glass sunroof. There is risk of injuries. Make sure that the area of movement of the glass sunroof is clear during opening and closing. ◀



##### WARNING

Unattended children or animals can move the vehicle and endanger themselves and traffic, e.g. with the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing of doors or windows.
- ▷ Shifting the selector lever into neutral.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Carry remote control along when exiting and lock the vehicle. ◀

## Overview



### Tilting the glass sunroof



Press back the switch up to or beyond the resistance point and release it.

The glass sunroof is raised.

### Opening glass sunroof

#### When the glass sunroof is closed



Press the switch back beyond the resistance point and release it twice.

The glass sunroof is opened.

Pressing the switch again stops

the motion.

#### With the glass sunroof completely raised



▷ Slide switch back to the resistance point and hold.

The glass sunroof is opened as long as the switch is pressed.

- ▷ Press the switch back beyond the resistance point and release it.  
The glass sunroof is opened.  
Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

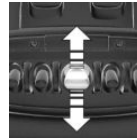
### Comfort position

If the glass sunroof stops before it is completely opened, it is in the Comfort position. In this position the wind noises in the interior are the least.

If desired, continue the movement by Pressing the switch.

### Closing glass sunroof

#### With the glass sunroof open



- ▷ Slide switch forward to the resistance point and hold.

The glass sunroof is closed as long as the switch is pressed and stops in the raised position.

- ▷ Press the switch forward beyond the resistance point and release it.

The glass sunroof is closed and stops in the raised position.

Pressing the switch toward the back stops the motion.

- ▷ Press the switch forward beyond the resistance point and release it twice.

The glass sunroof is closed.

Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

#### With the glass sunroof completely raised



Press the switch forward beyond the resistance point and release it.

The glass sunroof is closed.

### Pinch protection system

If the closing force exceeds a specific value as a glass sunroof closes, the closing action is interrupted.

The glass sunroof reopens slightly.

**WARNING**

Body parts can be jammed on operating the glass sunroof. There is risk of injuries. Make sure that the area of movement of the glass sunroof is clear during opening and closing. ◀

**Closing without the pinch protection system**

If there is an external danger, proceed as follows:

1. Press the switch forward beyond the resistance point and hold it.

The pinch protection is limited and the glass sunroof reopens slightly if the closing force exceeds a certain margin.

2. Press the switch forward again beyond the resistance point and hold until the glass sunroof closes without jam protection. Make sure that the closing area is clear.

**Initializing after a power failure**

After a power failure, it can happen that the glass sunroof can only be raised. The system must be initialized in this case. MINI recommends having this work performed by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.



# ADJUSTING

## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## SITTING SAFELY

The ideal seating position can make a vital contribution to relaxed, fatigue-free driving.

The seating position plays an important role in an accident in combination with:

- ▶ Safety belts, refer to page 51.
- ▶ Head restraints, refer to page 53.
- ▶ Airbags, refer to page 99.

## SEATS

### Information

**!** **WARNING**  
Seat adjustments while driving can lead to unexpected movements of the seat. Vehicle control could be lost. There is risk of an accident. Only adjust the side on the driver's side when the vehicle is stationary. ◀

**!** **WARNING**  
With a backrest inclined too far to the rear, the protective effect of the safety belt cannot be ensured anymore. There is a danger of sliding under the safety belt in an accident.

There is risk of injuries or danger to life. Adjust the seat prior to starting the trip. Adjust the backrest in an as upright position as possible and do not adjust again while driving. ◀

**!** **WARNING**  
There is risk of jamming when moving the seats. There is risk of injuries or risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment. ◀

## Adjusting seats

### Overview



- 1 Forward/backward
- 2 Thigh support
- 3 Height
- 4 Backrest tilt

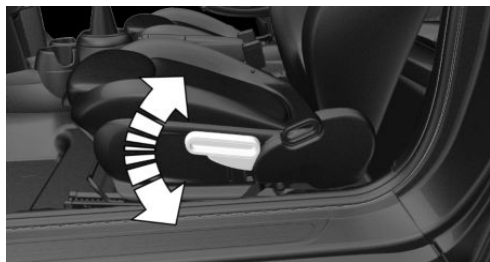
### Forward/backward



Pull the lever and slide the seat in the desired direction.

After releasing the lever, move the seat forward or back slightly making sure it engages properly.

### Height



Pull the lever up or press it down as often as needed to reach the desired height.

### Backrest tilt



Pull the lever and apply your weight to the backrest or lift it off, as necessary.

### Lumbar support

The curvature of the seat backrest can be adjusted in a way that it supports the lumbar region of the spine. The lower back and the spine are supported for upright posture.



Turn the wheel in order to increase or decrease the curvature.

### Thigh support



Pull the lever at the front of the seat and adjust the thigh support.

### In 3-door models: entering the rear

#### Information



#### WARNING

There is risk of jamming when moving the seats. There is risk of injuries or risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment. ◀



#### WARNING

Unexpected movements of the backrest while driving may occur due to an unlocked backrest. Vehicle control could be lost. There is

risk of injuries. Fold back and lock the backrests before driving. ◀

### Fold down seat back

1. Pull lever up to the stop.



2. Fold backrest forward.
3. Push the seat forward.

### Original position

The driver's seat features a mechanical memory function for forward/back and backrest adjustment.

1. Push the seat back into the original position.
2. Fold back the backrest to lock the seat.

If the backrest is folded back when the seat is not yet in the original position, the seat latches in the current position. In this case, manually adjust longitudinal direction, refer to page 50.

### Front seat heating



### Switching on



Press button once for each temperature level.

The maximum temperature is reached when three LEDs are lit.

If the journey is continued within approx. 15 minutes, the seat heating is activated automatically with the temperature selected last.

When Green mode, refer to page 165, is activated, the heater output is reduced.

### Switch off



Press button longer.

The LEDs go out.

## SAFETY BELTS

### Seats with safety belt

The vehicle has four or five seating positions, each of which is equipped with a safety belt.

### General information

Always make sure that safety belts are being worn by all occupants before driving off.

For the occupants' safety the belt locking mechanism triggers early. Slowly guide the belt out of the holder when applying it.

If needed, disengage the belt in the rear from the belt buckle on the side.

Although airbags enhance safety by providing added protection, they are not a substitute for safety belts.

The two outer safety belt buckles, integrated into the rear seat, are for passengers sitting on the left and right.

The center rear safety belt buckle is solely intended for the center passenger.

## Information

### WARNING

If the safety belt is used by more than one person, the protective effect of the safety belt cannot be ensured anymore. There is risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not allow more than one person to wear a single safety belt. Infants and children are not allowed in an occupant's lap, but must be transported and respectively secured in designated child restraint systems. ◀

### WARNING

The protective effect of the safety belts can be limited or lost when safety belts are fastened incorrectly. An incorrectly fastened safety belt can cause additional injuries, e.g. in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that all occupants are wearing safety belts correctly. ◀

### WARNING

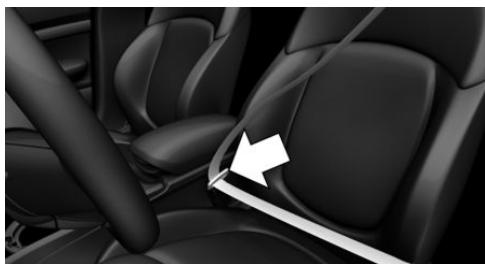
With a rear backrest that is not locked, the protective function of the middle safety belt is not guaranteed. There is risk of injuries or danger to life. If you are using the middle safety belt, lock the wider rear backrest. ◀

## Correct use of safety belts

- ▷ Wear the belt twist-free and as tight to your body as possible over your lap and shoulders.
- ▷ Wear the belt deep on your hips over your lap. The belt may not press on your stomach.
- ▷ Do not wear the belt on your throat, rub it on sharp edges, guide it or jam it in across hard or fragile objects.
- ▷ Avoid thick clothing.
- ▷ Re-tighten the belt frequently upward around your upper body.

## Buckling the belt

### General information



Make sure you hear the latch plate engage in the belt buckle.

### Unbuckling the belt

1. Hold the belt firmly.
2. Press the red button in the belt buckle.
3. Guide the belt back into its roll-up mechanism.

### Safety belt reminder for driver's seat and front passenger seat



The indicator lamp lights up and a signal sounds. Make sure that the safety belts are positioned correctly. The safety belt reminder is active at speeds above approx. 6 mph/10 km/h. It can also be activated if objects are placed on the front passenger seat.

### Damage to safety belts



#### WARNING

The protective effect of the safety belts may not be fully functional or fail in the following situations:

- ▷ Safety belts are damaged, soiled or changed in any other way.
- ▷ Safety belt buckle is damaged or heavily soiled.
- ▷ Belt tensioners or belt retractors were modified.

Safety belts can be imperceptibly damaged in the event of an accident. There is risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not modify safety belts, safety belt buckles, belt tensioners, belt retractors or belt anchors and keep them clean. Have the safety belts checked after an accident at the dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. ◀

## FRONT HEAD RESTRAINTS

### Information



#### WARNING

A missing protective effect due to removed or not correctly adjusted head restraints can cause injuries in the head and neck area. There is risk of injuries. Install head restraints on occupied seats prior to driving and make sure that the center of the head restraint supports the back of the head at eye level. ◀



#### WARNING

Objects on the head restraint reduce the protective effect in the head and neck area. There is risk of injuries.

- ▷ Do not use seat or head restraint covers.
- ▷ Do not hang objects, e.g., clothes hangers, directly on the head restraint.
- ▷ Only use accessories that have been determined to be safe for attachment to a head restraint.
- ▷ Do not use any accessories, e.g. pillows, while driving. ◀

### Correctly adjusted head restraint

#### General information

A correctly adjusted head restraint reduces the risk of injury to cervical vertebrae in the event of an accident.

Adjust the headrest via the backrest tilt as needed.

### Height

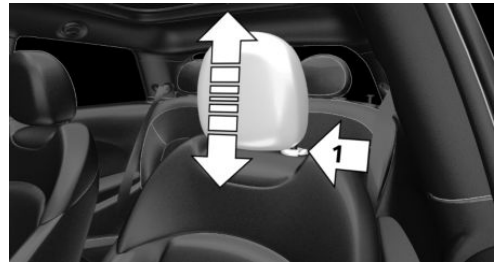
Adjust the head restraint so that its center is approximately at ear level.

### Distance

Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head.

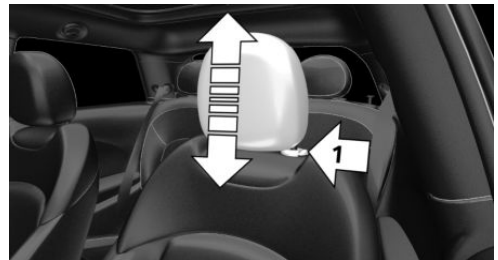
If necessary, adjust the distance by adjusting the tilt of the backrest.

### Adjusting the height



- ▷ To raise: pull.
- ▷ To lower: press button, arrow 1, and push headrest down.

### Removing



1. Pull head restraint up as far as possible.
2. Press button, arrow 1, and pull the head restraint out completely.

To remove the headrest, fold the backrest rearward if it is in the upright position.

Only remove the head restraint if no one will be sitting in the seat in question.

## REAR HEAD RESTRAINTS

### Information

#### WARNING

A missing protective effect due to removed or not correctly adjusted head restraints can cause injuries in the head and neck area. There is risk of injuries. Install head restraints on occupied seats prior to driving and make sure that the center of the head restraint supports the back of the head at eye level. ◀

#### WARNING

Objects on the head restraint reduce the protective effect in the head and neck area. There is risk of injuries.

- ▷ Do not use seat or head restraint covers.
- ▷ Do not hang objects, e.g., clothes hangers, directly on the head restraint.
- ▷ Only use accessories that have been determined to be safe for attachment to a head restraint.
- ▷ Do not use any accessories, e.g. pillows, while driving. ◀

### Correctly adjusted head restraint

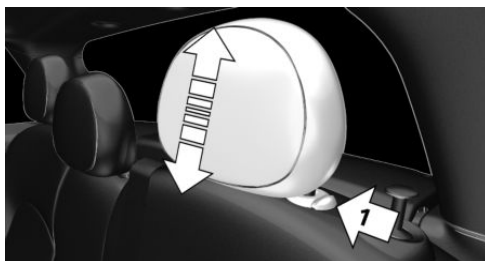
#### General information

A correctly adjusted head restraint reduces the risk of injury to cervical vertebrae in the event of an accident.

#### Height

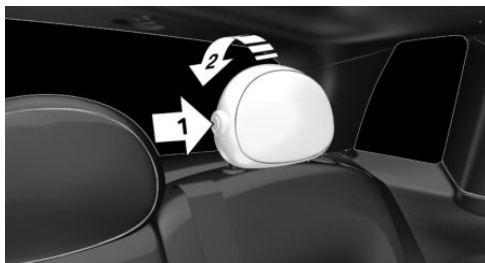
Adjust the head restraint so that its center is approximately at ear level.

### Adjusting the height



- ▷ To raise: push.
- ▷ To lower: press button, arrow 1, and push headrest down.

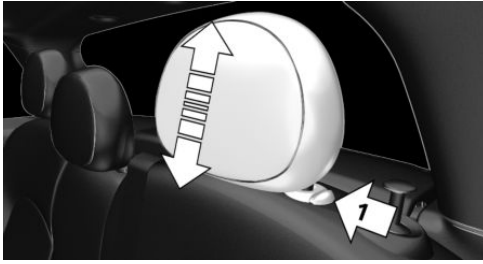
### Folding down



- ▷ To lower flaps: press the button, arrow 1, and press down the head restraint, arrow 2.
- ▷ Fold back up: pull up head restraints.

### Removing

Fold the seat down, refer to page 149, before removing the head restraint, otherwise the head restraint cannot be removed.



1. Pull head restraint up against the resistance.
2. Press button, arrow 1, and pull the head restraint out completely.

Only remove the head restraint if no one will be sitting in the seat in question.

## MIRRORS

### Exterior mirrors

#### General information

The mirror on the passenger side is more curved than the driver's side mirror.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the mirror setting is stored for the profile currently used. When the vehicle is unlocked via the remote control, the position is automatically retrieved if this function is active.

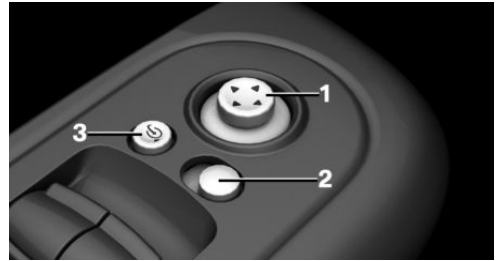
#### Information



#### WARNING

Objects reflected in the mirror are closer than they appear. The distance to the traffic behind could be incorrectly estimated, e.g. while changing lanes. There is risk of an accident. Estimate the distance to the traffic behind by looking over your shoulder. ◀

### Overview



- 1 Adjusting 55
- 2 Left/right, Automatic Curb Monitor
- 3 Fold in and out 56

### Selecting a mirror



To change over to the other mirror:  
Slide the switch.

### Adjusting electrically



The setting corresponds to the direction in which the button is pressed.

### Adjusting manually


In case of electrical malfunction press edges of mirror.

### Automatic Curb Monitor

#### The concept

If reverse gear is engaged, the mirror glass on the front passenger side is tilted downward. This improves your view of the curb and other low-lying obstacles when parking, e.g.

#### Activating

1.  Slide the switch to the driver's side mirror position.
2. Engage selector lever position R.

### Deactivating

Slide the switch to the passenger side mirror position.

### Fold in and out



#### CAUTION

Depending on the vehicle width, the vehicle can be damaged in car washes. There is risk of property damage. Before washing, fold in the mirrors by hand or with the button. ◀



Press button.

Possible at speeds up to approx. 15 mph/20 km/h.

Beneficial in the following situations:

- ▷ In car washes.
- ▷ On narrow roads.
- ▷ For folding mirrors back out that were folded away manually.

Mirrors that were folded in are folded out automatically at a speed of approx. 25 mph/40 km/h.

### Automatic heating

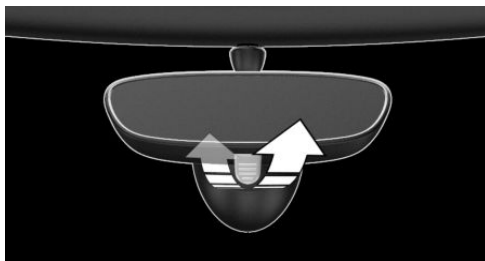
Both exterior mirrors are automatically heated whenever the engine is running.

### Automatic dimming feature

Both exterior mirrors are automatically dimmed. Photocells are used to control the Interior rearview mirror, refer to page 56.

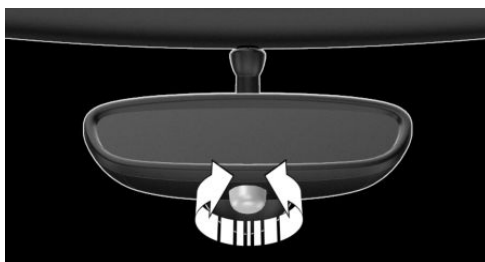
### Interior rearview mirror, manually dimmable

#### Flip lever



To reduce the blinding effect of the interior rearview mirror, flip the lever forward.

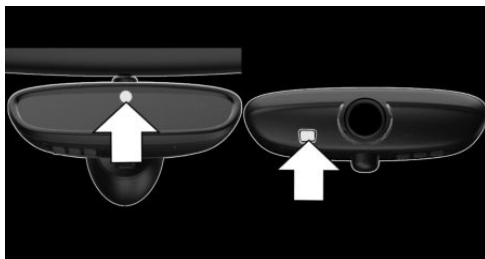
#### Turn knob



Turn the knob to reduce the blinding effect by the interior mirror.

### Interior rearview mirror, automatic dimming feature

#### The concept



Photocells are used for control:



- ▷ In the mirror glass.
- ▷ On the back of the mirror.

### Functional requirement

For proper operation:

- ▷ Keep the photocells clean.
- ▷ Do not cover the area between the inside rearview mirror and the windshield.

## STEERING WHEEL

### Information



#### WARNING

Steering wheel adjustments while driving can lead to unexpected steering wheel movements. Vehicle control could be lost. There is risk of an accident. Adjust the steering wheel while the vehicle is stationary only. ◀

### Adjusting



1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Fold the lever down.
3. Move the steering wheel to the preferred height and angle to suit your seating position.
4. Fold the lever back.
5. Switch off the ignition again if needed.

# TRANSPORTING CHILDREN SAFELY

## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not

necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## THE RIGHT PLACE FOR CHILDREN

### Information

#### WARNING

Unattended children or animals can move the vehicle and endanger themselves and traffic, e.g. with the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing of doors or windows.
- ▷ Shifting the selector lever into neutral.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Carry remote control along when exiting and lock the vehicle. ◀

### Children should always be in the rear

#### WARNING

Persons shorter than 5 ft, 150 cm cannot correctly fasten the safety belt without suitable additional restraint systems. The protective effect of the safety belts can be limited or lost when safety belts are fastened incorrectly. An incorrectly fastened safety belt can cause additional injuries, e.g. in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers.

There is risk of injuries or danger to life. Secure persons shorter than 5 ft, 150 cm using suitable restraint systems. ◀

Accident research shows that the safest place for children is in the back seat.

Only transport children younger than 13 years of age or shorter than 5 ft, 150 cm in the rear in child restraint systems provided in accordance with the age, weight and size of the child.

Children 13 years of age or older must wear a safety belt as soon as a suitable child restraint system can no longer be used due to their age, weight and size.

### Children on the front passenger seat

Before using a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, ensure that the front, knee, and side airbags on the front passenger side are deactivated. Automatic deactivation of front-seat passenger airbags, refer to page 101.

### Information

#### WARNING

Active front-seat passenger airbags can injure a child in a child restraint system when the airbags are activated. There is risk of injuries. Make sure that the front-seat passenger airbags are deactivated and that the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp lights up. ◀

**WARNING**

The stability of the child restraint system is limited or compromised with incorrect seat adjustment or improper installation of the child seat. There is risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest. If possible, adjust the backrest tilt for all affected backrests and correctly adjust the seats. Make sure that seats and backrests are securely engaged. If possible, adjust the height of the head restraints or remove them. ◀

## INSTALLING CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEMS

### Information

Pay attention to the specifications of the child restraint system manufacturer when selecting, installing, and using child restraint systems.

**WARNING**

The stability of the child restraint system is limited or compromised with incorrect seat adjustment or improper installation of the child seat. There is risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest. If possible, adjust the backrest tilt for all affected backrests and correctly adjust the seats. Make sure that seats and backrests are securely engaged. If possible, adjust the height of the head restraints or remove them. ◀

In order to facilitate the installation of a back-facing child restraint system in the rear:

Move the front passenger's seat as far up as possible before folding down the backrest.

### On the front passenger seat

#### Deactivating airbags

After installing a child restraint system in the front passenger seat, make sure that the front,

knee and side airbags on the front passenger side are deactivated.

Deactivate the front-seat passenger airbags automatically, refer to page 101.

**WARNING**

Active front-seat passenger airbags can injure a child in a child restraint system when the airbags are activated. There is risk of injuries. Make sure that the front-seat passenger airbags are deactivated and that the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp lights up. ◀

### Seat position and height

Before installing a child restraint system, move the front passenger seat as far back as possible and adjust its height to the highest and thus best possible position for the belt and to offer optimal protection in the event of an accident.

If the upper anchorage of the safety belt is located in front of the belt guide of the child seat, move the passenger seat carefully forward until the best possible belt guide position is reached.

### Child seat security



The rear safety belts and the front passenger safety belt can be permanently locked to fasten child restraint systems.

### Locking the safety belt

1. Pull out the strap completely.
2. Secure the child restraint system with the belt.

3. Allow the strap to be pulled in and pull it tight against the child restraint system. The safety belt is locked.
2. Remove the child restraint system.
3. Allow the strap to be pulled in completely.

### Unlocking the safety belt

1. Unbuckle the belt buckle.

## LATCH CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEM

LATCH: Lower Anchors and Tether for Children.

### Information

Pay attention to the operating and safety information of the child restraint system manufacturer when installing and using LATCH child restraint fixing system.

### Mounts for the lower LATCH anchors

The lower anchors may be used to attach the CRS to the vehicle seat up to a combined child and CRS weight of 65 lb when the child is restrained by the internal harnesses.

### Information

#### WARNING

If the LATCH child restraint fixing systems are not correctly engaged, the protective effect of the LATCH child restraint fixing system can be limited. There is risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the lower anchors are securely engaged and that the LATCH child restraint fixing system fits securely against the backrest. ◀

### Position



The corresponding symbol shows the mounts for the lower LATCH anchors.



Seats equipped with lower anchors are marked with a pair, 2, of LATCH symbols. It is not recommended to use the inner lower anchors of standard outer LATCH positions to fasten a child restraint sys-

tem on the middle seat. Use the vehicle seat belt instead for the middle seat.

### Before installing LATCH child restraint systems

Pull the belt away from the area of the child restraint system.

### Assembly of LATCH child restraint systems

1. Install child restraint system, see manufacturer's information.
2. Ensure that both LATCH anchors are properly connected.

### Child restraint fixing system with a tether strap

### Information



#### CAUTION

The mounting points for the upper retaining straps of child restraint systems are only provided for these retaining straps. When other objects are mounted, the anchors can be damaged. There is risk of property damage. Only mount child restraint systems to the upper retaining straps. ◀

### Mounting points



The respective symbol shows the anchor for the upper retaining strap. Seats with an upper Top Tether are marked

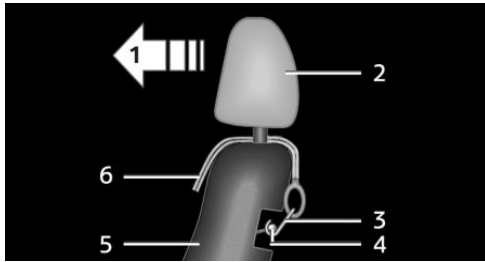
with this symbol. It can be found on the rear seat backrest or the rear window shelf.

### Retaining strap guide



#### WARNING

If the upper retaining strap is incorrectly used for the child restraint system, the protective effect can be reduced. There is risk of injuries. Make sure that the upper retaining strap is not guided across sharp edges and without twisting to the upper retaining strap. ◀



- 1 Direction of travel
- 2 Head restraint
- 3 Hook for upper retaining strap
- 4 Mounting point
- 5 Seat backrest
- 6 Upper retaining strap

### Attaching the upper retaining strap to the mounting point

1. Raise the head restraint if needed.
2. Guide the upper retaining strap between the supports of the head restraint.
3. Attach the hook of the retaining strap to the anchor on the back seat.
4. Tighten the retaining strap by pulling it down.



#### WARNING

In case of an accident, people sitting in the back can come into contact with the tightened retaining strap of the child restraint sys-

tem on the front passenger seat. There is risk of injuries or danger to life. With a mounted child restraint system, do not carry any people on the rear seat behind the front passenger seat. ◀

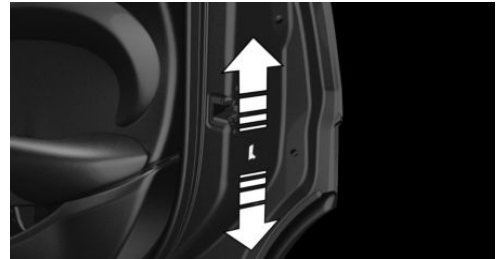


#### WARNING

If the rear backrest is not locked, the protective effect of the child restraint system is limited or there is none. In particular situations, e.g. braking maneuvers or in case of an accident, the rear backrest can fold forward. There is risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the rear backrests are locked. ◀

## ON 5-DOOR MODELS: LOCKING THE DOORS AND WINDOWS

### Doors



Push the locking lever on the rear doors up.

The door can now be opened from the outside only.

### Safety switch for the rear



Press button on the driver's door if children are being transported in the rear.

This locks various functions so that they cannot be operated from the rear: safety switch, refer to page 46.

# DRIVING

## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## START/STOP BUTTON

### The concept



Pressing the Start/Stop button switches the ignition on or off and starts the engine.

Steptronic transmission: the engine starts in selector lever position P or N with the brake pedal pressed when you press the Start/Stop button.

Manual transmission: the engine starts with the clutch pedal pressed when the Start/Stop button is pressed.

### Ignition on

Steptronic transmission: press the Start/Stop button, and do not press on the brake pedal at the same time.

Manual transmission: press the Start/Stop button without stepping on the clutch pedal.

All vehicle systems are ready for operation.

Most of the indicator and warning lights in the instrument cluster light up for a varied length of time.

To save battery power when the engine is off, switch off the ignition and any unnecessary electronic systems/power consumers.

### Ignition off

Manual transmission: press the Start/Stop button again without stepping on the clutch pedal.

Steptronic transmission: shift to selector lever position P, press the Start/Stop button again without stepping on the brake.

All indicator lights in the instrument cluster go out.

To save battery power when the engine is off, switch off the ignition and any unnecessary electronic systems/power consumers.

The ignition is switched off automatically in the following situations while the vehicle is stationary and the engine is off:

- ▷ During locking, also with the low beams activated.
- ▷ Shortly before the battery is discharged completely, so that the engine can still be started. This function is only available when the low beams are turned off.
- ▷ When opening and closing the driver door, if the driver's safety belt is unbuckled and the low beams are turned off.
- ▷ While the driver's safety belt is unbuckled with driver's door open and low beams off.
- ▷ The low beams switch to parking lights after approx. 15 minutes of no use.

### Radio ready state

Activate radio-ready state: when the engine is running: press the Start/Stop button.

Some electronic systems/power consumers remain ready for operation.

The radio-ready state is switched off automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ After approx. 8 minutes.
- ▷ When the vehicle is locked using the central locking system.
- ▷ Shortly before the battery is discharged completely, so that the engine can still be started.

The radio-ready state remains active if, e.g., the ignition is automatically switched off for the following reasons:

- ▷ Opening or closing the driver's door.
- ▷ Unfastening of the driver's safety belt.
- ▷ When automatically switching from low beams to parking lights.

If the engine is switched off and the ignition is switched on, the system automatically switches to the radio-ready state if the lights are turned off or, if correspondingly equipped, the day-time running lights are activated.

## STARTING THE ENGINE

### Information



#### DANGER

If the exhaust pipe is blocked or ventilation is insufficient, harmful exhaust gases can enter into the vehicle. The exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide, an odorless and colorless but highly toxic gas. In enclosed areas, exhaust gases can also accumulate outside of the vehicle. There is danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe free and ensure sufficient ventilation. ◀



#### WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can put itself into motion and roll away. There is risk of an accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, observe the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.

- ▷ On uphill grades or on a slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a slope, also secure the vehicle, e.g. with a wheel chock. ◀



#### CAUTION

In the case of repeated starting attempts or repeated starting in quick succession, the fuel is not burned or is inadequately burned. The catalytic converter can overheat. There is risk of property damage. Avoid repeated starting in quick succession. ◀

## Steptronic transmission

### Starting the engine

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Engage selector lever position P or N.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

The ignition is activated automatically for a certain time and is stopped as soon as the engine starts.

## Manual transmission

### Starting the engine

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press on the clutch pedal and shift to neutral.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

The ignition is activated automatically for a certain time and is stopped as soon as the engine starts.

## ENGINE STOP

### Information



#### WARNING

Unattended children or animals can move the vehicle and endanger themselves and traffic, e.g. with the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing of doors or windows.
- ▷ Shifting the selector lever into neutral.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Carry remote control along when exiting and lock the vehicle. ◀



#### WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can put itself into motion and roll away. There is risk of an accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, observe the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a slope, also secure the vehicle, e.g. with a wheel chock. ◀

### Before driving into a car wash

So that the vehicle can roll into a car wash observe instructions for going into an automatic car wash, refer to page 220.

### Steptronic transmission

#### Switching off the engine

1. Engage selector lever position P with the vehicle stopped.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.  
The engine is switched off.  
The radio-ready state is switched on.
3. Set the parking brake.

### Manual transmission

#### Switching off the engine

1. With the vehicle at a standstill, press the Start/Stop button.  
The engine is switched off.  
The radio-ready state is switched on.
2. Shift into first gear or reverse.
3. Set the parking brake.

## AUTO START/STOP FUNCTION

### The concept

The Auto Start/Stop function helps save fuel. The system switches off the engine during a stop, e.g., in traffic congestion or at traffic lights. The ignition remains switched on. The engine starts again automatically for driving off.

### Automatic operation

After every start of the engine using the Start/Stop button, the Auto Start/Stop function is in the last selected state, refer to page 66. When the Auto Start/Stop function is active, it is available when the vehicle is traveling faster than about 3 mph, approx. 5 km/h.

### Engine stop

The engine is switched off automatically during a stop under the following conditions:

Manual transmission:

- ▷ Neutral is engaged and the clutch pedal is not pressed.
- ▷ The driver's safety belt is buckled or the driver's door is closed.

Steptronic transmission:

- ▷ The selector lever is in selector lever position D.
- ▷ Brake pedal remains depressed while the vehicle is stopped.



- ▷ The driver's safety belt is buckled or the driver's door is closed.

In order to be able to release the brake pedal, engage lever in position P. The engine remains off.

To continue driving depress the brake pedal. When a gear is engaged, the engine starts automatically.

The air flow from the air conditioner is reduced when the engine is switched off.

### Displays in the instrument cluster



The display indicates that the Auto Start/Stop function is ready for an Automatic engine start.



The display indicates that the conditions for an automatic engine stop have not been met.

### Functional limitations

The engine is not switched off automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ External temperature too low.
- ▷ The external temperature is high and automatic climate control is running.
- ▷ The car's interior has not yet been heated or cooled to the required level.
- ▷ The engine is not yet at operating temperature.
- ▷ The wheels are at a sharp angle or the steering wheel is being turned.
- ▷ After driving in reverse.
- ▷ Fogging of the windows when the automatic climate control is switched on.
- ▷ The vehicle battery charge is very low.
- ▷ At higher elevations.
- ▷ The engine compartment lid is unlocked.

- ▷ The parking assistant is activated.
- ▷ Stop-and-go traffic.
- ▷ Selector lever in selector lever position R, N or M/S.

### Starting the engine

The engine starts automatically under the following conditions:

- ▷ Manual transmission:  
The clutch pedal is pressed.
- ▷ Steptronic transmission:  
By releasing the brake pedal.

After the engine starts, accelerate as usual.

### Safety mode

After the engine switches off automatically, it will not start again automatically if any one of the following conditions are met:

- ▷ The driver's safety belt is unbuckled and the driver's door is open.
- ▷ The hood was unlocked.

Some indicator lights light up for a varied length of time.

The engine can only be started via the Start/Stop button.

### Functional limitations

Even if driving off was not intended, the deactivated engine starts up automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ Excessive warming of the car's interior when the cooling function is switched on.
- ▷ The steering wheel is turned.
- ▷ Steptronic transmission: change from selector lever position D to R, N or M/S.
- ▷ Steptronic transmission: change from selector lever position P to R, N, D or M/S.
- ▷ The vehicle begins rolling.
- ▷ Fogging of the windows when the automatic climate control is switched on.

- ▷ The vehicle battery charge is very low.
- ▷ Excessive cooling of the car's interior when the heating is switched on.
- ▷ Manual transmission: low brake vacuum pressure; this can occur, e.g., if the brake pedal is depressed a number of times in succession.

## Switching the system on/off

### Using the button



Press button.

- ▷ LED comes on: Auto Start/Stop function is deactivated.  
The engine is started during an automatic engine stop.  
The engine can only be stopped or started via the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ LED goes out: Auto Start/Stop function is activated.

### Switching off the vehicle during an automatic engine stop

During an automatic engine stop, the vehicle can be switched off permanently, e. g., when leaving it.

1. Steptronic transmission: engage selector lever position P.
2. Press the Start/Stop button. The ignition is switched off. The Auto Start/Stop function is deactivated.

3. Manual transmission: shift into first gear or reverse.
4. Set the parking brake.

Engine start as usual via Start/Stop button.

### Automatic deactivation

In certain situations, Auto Start/Stop function is deactivated automatically for safety reasons as if the driver were absent.

### Malfunction

The Auto Start/Stop function no longer switches off the engine automatically. A Check Control message is displayed. It is possible to continue driving. Have the system checked.

## PARKING BRAKE

### Applying

The lever automatically engages after being pulled up.



The indicator lamp lights up red. The parking brake is set.



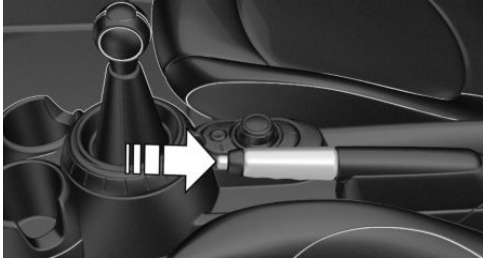
Lower lamp: indicator lamp in Canadian models

If for once use during driving is required, engage the parking brake slightly and hold the button down.

To prevent corrosion and one-sided brake action, lightly apply the parking brake periodically while coasting, if traffic conditions permit.

The brake lights will not light up if the parking brake is set.

## Releasing



Raise lever slightly, press the button and guide the lever down.

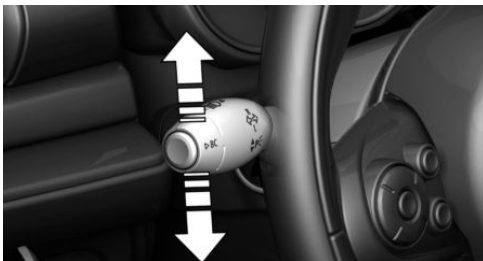
## TURN SIGNAL, HIGH BEAMS, HEADLIGHT FLASHER

### Turn signal

#### Turn signal in exterior mirror

When driving and during operation of the turn signals or hazard warning system, do not fold in the exterior mirrors, so that the signal lights on the exterior mirror are easy to see.

### Using turn signals



Press the lever beyond the resistance point.

The turn signal lever returns into its starting position after actuation.

To switch off manually, slightly tap the lever to the resistance point.


### Triple turn signal activation

Slightly tap lever.

The turn signal flashes three times.

The function can be activated or deactivated.

On the Control Display:

1.  "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Triple turn signal"

Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

### Signaling briefly

Press the lever to the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you want the turn signal to flash.

### Malfunction

Unusually rapid flashing of the indicator lamp indicates that a turn signal bulb has failed.

### High beams, headlight flasher



- ▷ High beams, arrow 1.
- ▷ Headlight flasher, arrow 2.

## WASHER/WIPER SYSTEM

### Switching the wipers on/off and brief wipe

#### General information

Do not use the wipers if the windshield is dry, as this may damage the wiper blades or cause them to become worn more quickly.

#### Information



#### CAUTION

If the wipers are frozen to the windshield, the wiper blades can be torn off and the wiper motor overheat on switching on. There is risk of property damage. Defrost the windshield prior to switching the wipers on. ◀



#### WARNING

If the wipers start moving in the folded away state, damage may occur to parts of the vehicle or body parts can be jammed. There is risk of injuries or risk of property damage. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are in the folded away state and the wipers are folded in when switching on. ◀

### Switching on



The lever automatically returns to its initial position when released.

- ▷ Normal wiper speed: tap up once.  
The wipers switch to intermittent operation when the vehicle is stationary.

- ▷ Fast wiper speed: tap up twice or tap once beyond the resistance point.

Wipers change to normal speed when vehicle comes to standstill.

### Switch off and brief wipe



The lever automatically returns to its initial position when released.

- ▷ Single wipe: press down once.
- ▷ To switch off from normal wiper speed: press down once.
- ▷ To switch off from fast wiper speed: press down twice.

### Interval mode or rain sensor

#### The concept

Without the rain sensor, the frequency of the wiper operation is preset.

The rain sensor automatically controls the time between wipes depending on the intensity of the rainfall. The sensor is located on the windshield, directly behind the interior rearview mirror.

## Activating/deactivating



Press button on the wiper lever.

Wiping is started. If the vehicle is equipped with a rain sensor: LED in wiper lever lights up.

When wipers are frozen to windshield, wiper operation is deactivated.

### CAUTION

If the rain sensor is activated, the wipers can accidentally start moving in car washes. There is risk of property damage. Deactivate the rain sensor in car washes. ◀

## Setting the frequency or sensitivity of the rain sensor



Turn the thumbwheel to adjust the frequency or sensitivity of the rain sensor.

Up: short interval or high sensitivity of the rain sensor.

Down: long interval or low sensitivity of the rain sensor.

## Washing the windshield



Pull the wiper lever towards you.

The system sprays washer fluid on the windshield and activates the wipers briefly.

### WARNING

The washer fluid can freeze onto the window at low temperatures and obstruct the view. There is risk of an accident. Only use the washer systems, if the washer fluid cannot freeze. Use antifreeze if needed. ◀

### CAUTION

When the wiper water container is empty, the wash pump cannot work as intended. There is risk of property damage. Do not use the washer system when the wash water container is empty. ◀

## Rear window wiper

### Switching on the rear window wiper



Turn the switch from idle position 0 upward, arrow 1: interval mode. When reverse gear is en-

gaged, the system switches to continuous operation.

### Cleaning rear window

In interval mode: turn the switch further, arrow 2. The switch automatically returns to its interval position when released.

In idle position: turn switch downward, arrow 3. The switch automatically returns to its idle position when released.

### Fold-out position of the wipers

Helpful when changing the wiper blades or under frosty conditions, e.g.

#### WARNING

If the wipers start moving in the folded away state, damage may occur to parts of the vehicle or body parts can be jammed. There is risk of injuries or risk of property damage. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are in the folded away state and the wipers are folded in when switching on. ◀

1. Switch the ignition on and off again.
2. With icy conditions make sure that blades are not frozen to the windshield.
3. Press the wiper lever up beyond the point of resistance and hold it for approx. 3 seconds, until the wiper remains in a nearly vertical position.

After the wipers are folded back down, the wiper system must be reactivated.

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Push wiper lever down. Wipers move to their resting position and are ready again for operation.

## WASHER FLUID

### Information

#### WARNING

Some antifreeze agents can contain harmful substances and are flammable. There is risk of fire and risk of injuries. Observe the instructions on the containers. Keep antifreeze away from ignition sources. Do not refill operating materials into different bottles. Store operating materials out of reach of children.

United States: The washer fluid mixture ratio is regulated by the U.S. EPA and many individual states; do not exceed the allowable washer fluid dilution ratio limits that apply. Follow the usage instructions on the washer fluid container.

Use of BMW's Windshield Washer Concentrate or the equivalent is recommended. ◀

#### WARNING

Improperly executed work under the hood can damage components and lead to a safety risk. There is risk of accidents or risk of property damage. Have work under the hood be executed by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. ◀

### Washer fluid reservoir



All washer nozzles are supplied from one reservoir in the engine compartment.

Fill with a mixture of windshield washer concentrate and tap water and – if required – with

a washer antifreeze, according to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Mix the washer fluid before adding to find the right mixture.

Do not add windshield washer concentrate and antifreeze undiluted and do not fill with pure water; this could damage the wiper system.

Do not mix window washer concentrates of different manufacturers because they can clog the windshield washer nozzles.

Recommended minimum fill quantity: 0.2 US gal/1 liter.

## MANUAL TRANSMISSION

### Shifting



#### CAUTION

When shifting to a lower gear, excessive speeds can damage the engine. There is risk of property damage. When shifting into 5th or 6th gear, press the gearshift lever to the right. ◀

### Reverse gear

Select only when the vehicle is stationary.

To overcome the resistance push the selector lever dynamically to the left and engage the reverse gear.

## STEPTRONIC TRANSMISSION

### Selector lever positions

#### D Drive

Selector lever position for normal vehicle operation. All gears for forward travel are activated automatically.

#### R is Reverse

Select only when the vehicle is stationary.

#### N Neutral:

The vehicle may roll. Use in automatic car washes, e.g.

#### P Park

Select only when the vehicle is stationary. The drive wheels are blocked.

Before exiting the vehicle, make sure that selector lever position P is set. Otherwise, the vehicle may begin to move.

#### Kickdown

Kickdown is used to achieve maximum driving performance. Step on the accelerator pedal beyond the resistance point at the full throttle position.

### Engaging selector lever positions

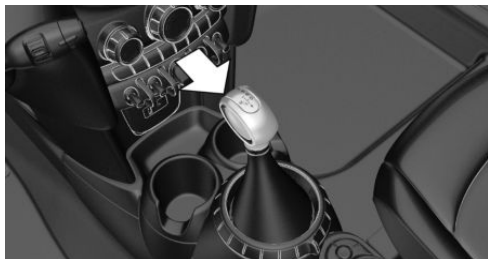
To prevent the vehicle from creeping after you select a gear, maintain pressure on the brake pedal until you are ready to start.

The selector lever can only be taken out of selector lever position P if the ignition is on or the engine is running.

With the vehicle is stationary, press on the brake pedal before shifting out of selector lever position P or N; otherwise, the selector lever is blocked: shift lock.

A block prevents the inadvertent switching to selector lever position P or R or the inadvertent change from selector lever position P.

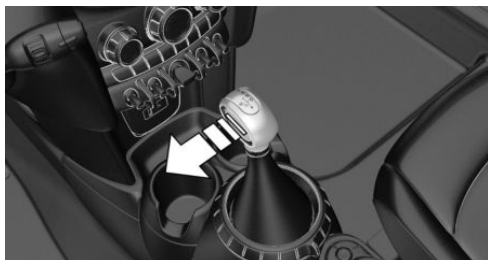
## Canceling the lock



Press button on the front of the selector lever, arrow.

## Sport program and manual mode M/S

### Activating the sport program



Press the selector lever to the left out of selector lever position D.

The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster, e.g., S1.

The sport program of the transmission is activated.

### Activating the M/S manual mode

1. Press the selector lever to the left out of selector lever position D.
2. Push the selector lever forward or backward.

Manual mode becomes active and the gear is changed.

The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster, e.g., M1.

If the situation requires, the Steptronic transmission continues to shift automatically.

Example: once maximum engine speed is attained, M/S manual mode is automatically upshifted as needed.

### Switching to manual mode

- ▷ To shift down: press the selector lever forward.
- ▷ To shift up: pull the selector lever rearwards.

Gears will only be shifted at appropriate engine and road speeds, for example downshifting is not possible if the engine speed is too high.

The selected gear is briefly displayed in the instrument cluster, followed by the currently selected gear.

### Manual mode M/S: prevent automatic upshifting

Once a particular engine speed is attained, M/S manual mode is automatically upshifted as needed.

For vehicles with Steptronic Sport transmission, automatic shift operations are not performed if one of the following conditions is met:

- ▷ DSC is deactivated.
- ▷ TRACTION is activated.

In addition, there is no downshift for kickdown.

With the respective transmission version, the lowest possible gear can be selected by simultaneously operating the kickdown and the left shift paddle. However, this effect is not produced via the shift paddles when switching briefly from D to manual mode.

### Ending the sport program/manual mode

Push the selector lever to the right.

D is displayed in the instrument cluster.



## Shift paddles for Steptronic Sport transmission



The shift paddles on the steering wheel allow you to shift gears quickly while keeping both hands on the steering wheel.

- ▶ Shift up: briefly pull right shift paddle.
- ▶ Shift down: briefly pull left shift paddle.
- ▶ With the respective transmission version, the lowest possible gear can be selected by pulling and holding the left shift paddle.

Gears will only be shifted at appropriate engine and road speeds, for example downshifting is not possible if the engine speed is too high.

The selected gear is briefly displayed in the instrument cluster, followed by the current gear.

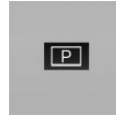
If the shift paddles on the steering wheel are used to shift gears in automatic mode, the transmission temporarily switches to manual mode.

If the selector lever is still in selector lever position D with the respective transmission version, it is possible to switch back into the automatic mode:

- ▶ Pull and hold right shift paddle.  
or
- ▶ In addition to the briefly pulled right shift paddle, briefly pull the left shift paddle.

In the manual mode, after conservative driving for a certain amount of time or if there has been no acceleration or shifting of the shift paddles within a certain amount of time, the transmission switches back to automatic mode.

## Displays in the instrument cluster



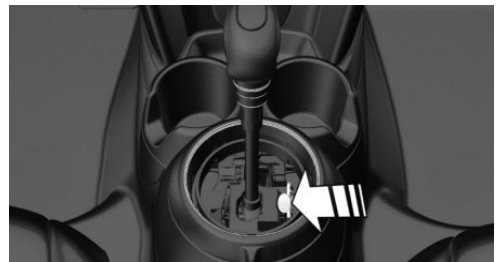
The selector lever position is displayed, e.g.: P.

## Manually release the transmission lock

Should the selector lever be blocked in selector lever position P despite the ignition being turned on, the brake being depressed and the unlock button being pressed, the transmission lock can be manually canceled:

Before unlocking the transmission lock manually, engage the parking brake forcefully to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.

1. Loosen the sleeve of the selector lever.
2. Pull the sleeve over the selector lever. Unplug the cable connector if needed.
3. Using the screwdriver from the onboard vehicle tool kit, refer to page 202, press the yellow release lever downward, arrow.



4. Move the selector lever slightly toward the rear; to do this press the unlock button on the front of the selector lever.  
Release the release lever.
5. Bring the selector lever into the desired position.

## Steptronic Sport transmission: Launch Control

### The concept

Launch Control enables optimum acceleration on surfaces with good traction.

### General information

The use of Launch Control causes premature component wear since this function represents a very heavy load for the vehicle.

Do not use Launch Control during the break-in, refer to page 158, period.

To increase vehicle stability, activate DSC again as soon as possible.

An experienced driver may be able to achieve better acceleration values in DSC OFF mode, refer to page 115.


### Requirements

Launch Control is available when the engine is warmed up, that is, after uninterrupted driving of at least 6 miles/10 km.

To start with Launch Control do not steer the steering wheel.

### Start with launch control

While the engine is running:

1.  Press button and select SPORT with Driving Dynamics Control, refer to page 117.

The instrument cluster displays TRACTION in combination with SPORT. The DSC OFF indicator lamp lights up.

2. Engage selector lever position S.
3. With the left foot, forcefully press down on the brake.
4. Step on the accelerator pedal beyond the resistance point at the full throttle position, kickdown.

A flag symbol is displayed in the instrument cluster.

5. The starting engine speed adjusts. Within 3 seconds, release the brake.

Before using Launch Control, allow the transmission to cool down for approx. 5 minutes.

# DISPLAYS

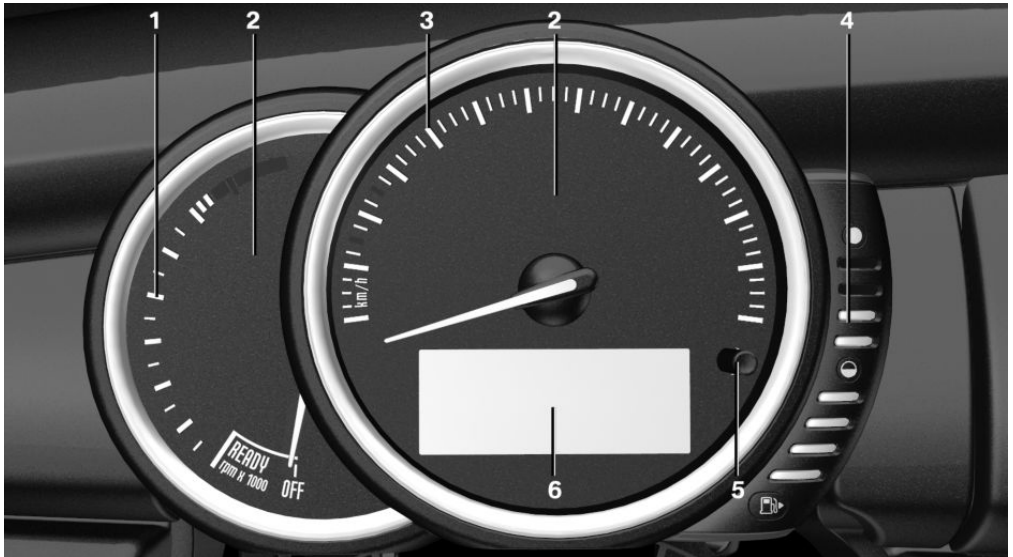
## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not

necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

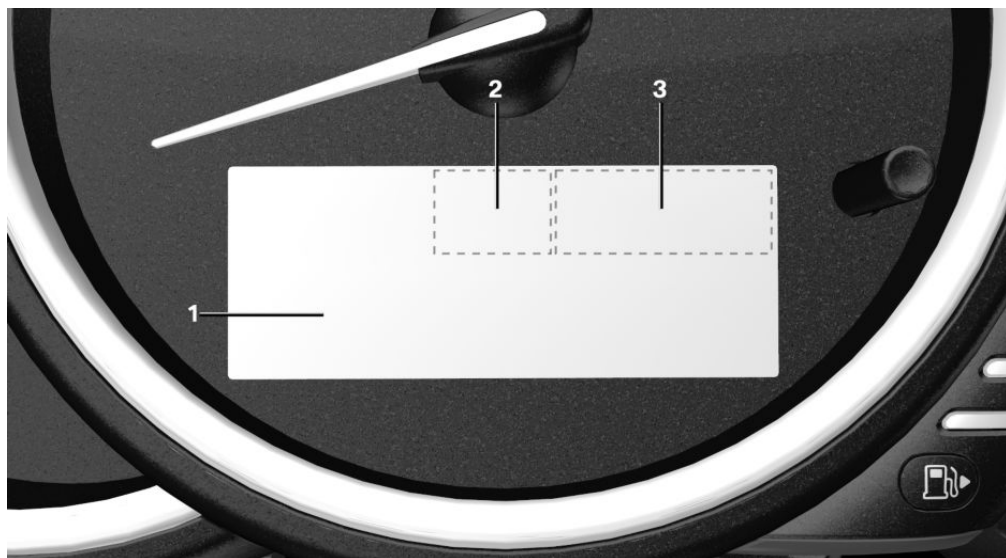
## INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

### Overview, instrument cluster



- |   |                              |                    |   |                     |                    |
|---|------------------------------|--------------------|---|---------------------|--------------------|
| 1 | Tachometer                   | <a href="#">80</a> | 4 | Fuel gauge          | <a href="#">80</a> |
| 2 | Messages, e.g. Check Control |                    | 5 | Display/reset miles | <a href="#">80</a> |
| 3 | Speedometer                  |                    | 6 | Electronic displays | <a href="#">76</a> |

## Electronic displays



- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p><b>1</b> Driver assistance systems<br/>Messages, e.g. Check Control<br/>Time <a href="#">80</a><br/>External temperature <a href="#">80</a><br/>Selection lists <a href="#">84</a><br/>Total miles/trip odometer <a href="#">80</a></p> | <p>On-board computer <a href="#">84</a></p> <p><b>2</b> Selector lever position display <a href="#">71</a><br/>Gear shift indicator <a href="#">82</a></p> <p><b>3</b> Driving Dynamics Control <a href="#">117</a><br/>Status</p> |
|--|--|

## CHECK CONTROL

### The concept

The Check Control system monitors functions in the vehicle and notifies you of malfunctions in the monitored systems.

A Check Control message is displayed as a combination of indicator or warning lights and text messages in the instrument cluster and in the Head-up Display.

In addition, an acoustic signal may be output and a text message may appear on the Control Display.

## Indicator/warning lights

### General information

The indicator and warning lights can light up in a variety of combinations and colors.

Several of the lights are checked for proper functioning and light up temporarily when the engine is started or the ignition is switched on.

### Red lights

#### Safety belt reminder



Flashing or illuminated: safety belt on the driver or passenger side is not buckled. The safety belt reminder can also

be activated if objects are placed on the front passenger seat.

Make sure that the safety belts are positioned correctly.

### Airbag system



Airbag system and belt tensioner are not working.

Have the vehicle checked immediately by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

### Parking brake, brake system



The parking brake is set.

For additional information, refer to Release parking brake, refer to page 67.



### Front-end collision warning



Illuminated: advance warning is issued, e.g., when there is the impending danger of a collision or the distance to the vehicle ahead is too small.

Increase distance.

Flashing: acute warning of the imminent danger of a collision when the vehicle approaches another vehicle at a relatively high differential speed.

Intervention by braking or make an evasive maneuver.

### Pedestrian warning



If a collision with a person detected in this way is imminent, the symbol lights up and a signal sounds.

## Orange lights

### Active Cruise Control



The number bars shows the selected distance from the vehicle driving ahead.

For more information, see Camera-based cruise control, refer to page 119.

### Vehicle detection, Active Cruise Control



Illuminated: vehicle driving ahead detected.

Flashing: the conditions are not adequate for operating the system.

The system was deactivated but applies the brakes until you actively resume control by pressing on the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.

## Yellow lights

### Anti-lock Braking System ABS



Avoid sudden braking as much as possible. Braking force boost may not be working. Stop cautiously. Take into account the longer brake distance.



Have checked immediately by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

### DSC Dynamic Stability Control



Flashing: DSC controls the drive and braking forces. The vehicle is stabilized.

Reduce speed and adapt driving style to the driving circumstances.

Illuminated: DSC failed. Have system checked immediately by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

For additional information, refer to Dynamic Stability Control DSC, refer to page 115.

### DSC Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated or DTC Dynamic Traction Control is activated



Dynamic Stability Control DSC is switched off or Dynamic Traction Control DTC is switched on.

For additional information, refer to Dynamic Stability Control DSC, refer to page 115, and Dynamic Traction Control DTC, refer to page 116.

### Flat Tire Monitor FTM



The Flat Tire Monitor signals a loss of tire inflation pressure in a tire.

Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers. For additional information, refer to Flat Tire Monitor, refer to page 106.

### Tire Pressure Monitor TPM



Illuminated: the Tire Pressure Monitor signals a loss of tire inflation pressure in a tire.

Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.

Flashing and then continuously illuminated: no flat tire or loss of tire inflation pressure can be detected.

- ▷ Interference through systems or devices with the same radio frequency: After leaving the area of the interference, the system automatically becomes active again.
- ▷ TPM could not conclude the reset: perform the reset of the system again.
- ▷ A wheel without TPM electronics is mounted: Have it checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop as needed.
- ▷ Malfunction: Have system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

For additional information, refer to Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 102.

### Steering system



Steering system in some cases not working.

Have steering system checked immediately by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

### Engine functions



Have vehicle checked immediately by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

For additional information, refer to On-board Diagnostics socket, refer to page 201.

### Green lights

#### Turn signal



Turn signal switched on.

Unusually rapid flashing of the indicator lamp indicates that a turn signal bulb has failed.

For additional information, refer to Turn signal, refer to page 67.

### Parking lights, headlight control



Parking lights or headlights are activated.

For additional information, refer to Parking lights/low beams, headlight control, refer to page 94.

### Front fog lights



Front fog lights are activated.

For additional information, refer to Front fog lights, refer to page 97.

## High-beam Assistant



High-beam Assistant is switched on. High beams are activated and off automatically as a function of the traffic situation.

For additional information, refer to High-beam Assistant, refer to page 96.

## Cruise control



The system is switched on. It maintains the speed that was set using the control elements on the steering wheel.

## Blue lights

### High beams



High beams are activated. For additional information, refer to High beams, refer to page 67.

## General lamps



At least one Check Control message is displayed or is stored.

## Text messages

Text messages in combination with a symbol in the instrument cluster explain a Check Control message and the meaning of the indicator and warning lights.




## Supplementary text messages

Additional information, such as on the cause of an error or the required action, can be called up via Check Control.

With urgent messages the added text will be automatically displayed on the Control Display.

## Symbols

Within the supplementary text, the following functions can be selected independent of the check control message.

- ▷  Display additional information about the Check Control message in the Integrated Owner's Manual.
- ▷  "Service request"  
Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
- ▷  "Roadside Assistance"  
Contact Roadside Assistance.

## Hiding Check Control messages





Press and hold PC button on blinker lever.

- ▷ Some Check Control messages are displayed continuously and are not cleared until the malfunction is eliminated. If several malfunctions occur at once, the messages are displayed consecutively. These messages can be faded for approx. 8 seconds. After this time, they are displayed again automatically.
- ▷ Other Check Control messages are faded automatically after approx. 20 seconds. They are stored and can be displayed again later.

## Displaying stored Check Control messages

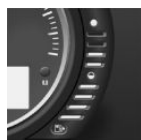
On the Control Display:

1.  "Vehicle info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3.  "Check Control"
4. Select the text message.

## Messages after trip completion

Special messages displayed while driving are displayed again after the ignition is switched off.

## FUEL GAUGE



Vehicle tilt position may cause the display to vary.

The arrow beside the fuel pump symbol shows which side of the vehicle the fuel filler flap is on.

Hints on refueling, refer to page [174](#).

## TACHOMETER

Always avoid engine speeds in the red warning field. In this range, the fuel supply is interrupted to protect the engine.

## ODOMETER AND TRIP ODOMETER

### The concept

Odometer and trip odometer are displayed in the instrument cluster.

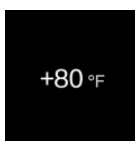
## Resetting the trip odometer



Press the knob.

- ▷ The odometer is displayed when the ignition is switched off.
- ▷ When the ignition is switched on, the trip odometer is reset.

## EXTERNAL TEMPERATURE



If the indicator drops to +37 °F/+3 °C, a signal sounds.

A Check Control message is displayed.

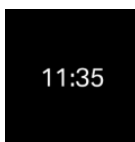
There is an increased risk of ice on roads.



### WARNING

Even at temperatures above +37 °F/+3 °C there can be a danger of icy roads, e.g. on bridges or shady sections of road. There is risk of an accident. Adjust your driving style to the weather conditions at low temperatures. ◀

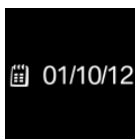
## TIME



The time is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Setting the time on the Control Display, refer to page [87](#).

## DATE



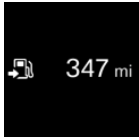
The date is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Set the date on the Control Display, refer to page [87](#).



## RANGE

### Display



With a low remaining range:

- ▷ A Check Control message is displayed briefly.
- ▷ The remaining range is shown on the onboard computer.
- ▷ With a dynamic driving style, e.g. taking curves aggressively, the engine function is not always ensured.

The Check Control message appears continuously below a range of approx. 30 miles/50 km.



### CAUTION

With a range of less than 30 miles/50 km it is possible that the engine will no longer have sufficient fuel. Engine functions are no longer ensured. There is risk of property damage. Refuel promptly. ◀

### Displaying the cruising range

1. "Settings"
2. "Instrument cluster"
3. "Range"

## CURRENT FUEL CONSUMPTION

### The concept

Displays the current fuel consumption. Check whether you are currently driving in an efficient and environmentally-friendly manner.

### Displaying the current fuel consumption

1. "Settings"
2. "Instrument cluster"
3. "Current consumption"

## SERVICE REQUIREMENTS

### The concept

After the ignition is turned on the instrument cluster briefly displays available driving distance or time to the next scheduled maintenance.

A service advisor can read out the current service requirements from your remote control.

### Display

### Detailed information on service requirements

More information on the scope of service required can be displayed on the Control Display.

1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Service required"
  - Required maintenance procedures and legally mandated inspections are displayed.
4. Select an entry to call up detailed information.

### Symbols



Symbols	Description
	No service is currently required.
	The deadline for scheduled maintenance or a legally mandated inspection is approaching.
	The service deadline has already passed.

### Entering appointment dates

Enter the dates for the required inspections.

Make sure that the vehicle's date and time are set correctly.

On the Control Display:

1.  "Vehicle info"
  2. "Vehicle status"
  3.  "Service required"
  4. "§ Vehicle inspection"
  5. "Date:"
  6. Adjust the settings.
  7. Confirm.
- The entered date is stored.

## GEAR SHIFT INDICATOR

### The concept



The system recommends the most fuel efficient gear for the current driving situation.

### General information



Depending on the vehicle's features and country version of the vehicle, the gear shift indicator is active in the manual mode of the Steptronic transmission and with manual transmission.

Suggestions to shift gear up or down are displayed in the instrument cluster.

### Manual transmission: displaying

Example	Description
	Fuel efficient gear is set.
	Shift into fuel efficient gear.

### Steptronic transmission: displaying

Example	Description
	Fuel efficient gear is set.
	Shift into fuel efficient gear.

## SPEED LIMIT DETECTION

### The concept

#### Speed limit detection

Speed limit detection shows the current maximum permitted speed in the instrument cluster. The camera at the base of the interior rear-view mirror detects traffic signs at the edge of the road as well as variable overhead sign posts. Traffic signs with extra symbols for wet road conditions, etc. are also detected and compared with the vehicle's onboard data, such as for the rain sensor, and will be displayed depending on the situation.

With the navigation system, the system takes into account the information stored in the navigation data and also displays speed limits present on routes without signs.

Without a navigation system, the system is subject to limitations imposed by technology. Speed limits with extra text characters are always displayed.

### Information

Speed limits when towing a trailer are not shown.



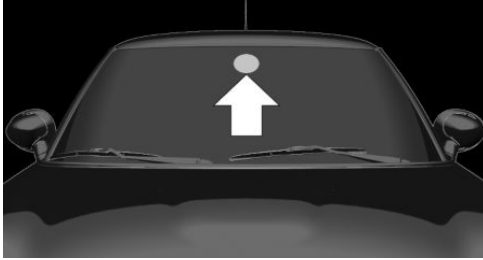
#### WARNING

The system does not relieve from the personal responsibility to correctly assess visibility and traffic situation. There is risk of an accident. Adjust the driving style to the traffic conditions.

Watch traffic closely and actively interfere in the respective situations. ◀

## Overview


### Camera



The camera is installed near the interior rearview mirror.

Keep the windshield in the area behind the interior rearview mirror clean and clear.

### Switching on/off

1.  "Settings"
2. "Instrument cluster"
3. "Speed limit information"

If speed limit detection is switched on, it can be displayed on the info display in the instrument cluster via the on-board computer.

### Display

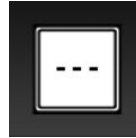
The following is displayed in the instrument cluster:

### Speed limit detection



The last speed limit detected.

Without a navigation system the traffic signals are grayed out after curves or longer stretches of roadway.



With navigation system: speed limit detection is not available.



Without navigation system: speed limit detection switched on but no speed limit or cancellation is detected.

Speed limit detection can also be displayed in the Head-up Display.

### System limits

The system may not be fully functional and may provide incorrect information in the following situations:

- ▷ In heavy fog, rain or snowfall.
- ▷ When signs are concealed by objects.
- ▷ When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- ▷ When driving toward bright lights.
- ▷ When the windshield behind the interior rearview mirror is fogged over, dirty or covered by a sticker, etc.
- ▷ In the event of incorrect detection by the camera.
- ▷ If the speed limits stored in the navigation system are incorrect.
- ▷ In areas not covered by the navigation system.
- ▷ When roads differ from the navigation, such as due to changes in road routing.
- ▷ When passing buses or trucks with a speed sticker.
- ▷ If the traffic signs are non-conforming.
- ▷ During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.

## SELECTION LISTS IN THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

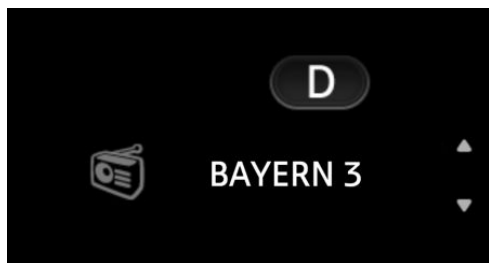
### The concept

With the buttons on the steering wheel and the display in the instrument cluster the following can be displayed or operated:




- ▷ Current audio source.
- ▷ Redial phone feature.
- ▷ Turn on voice activation system.

It also displays programs of the Driving Dynamics Control.

### Display



### Activating a list and adjusting the setting

Button the steering wheel	Function
	Activate the respective list and select the desired settings.
	
	Confirm the selection.

## ON-BOARD COMPUTER

### Calling up information on the info display

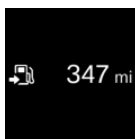


Press and hold PC button on blinker lever.

Information is displayed in the info display of the instrument cluster.

### Information at a glance

#### Info display



Repeatedly pressing the button on the turn signal lever calls up the following information in the info display:


- ▷ Range.
- ▷ GREEN Info.  
When GREEN Mode is activated.
- ▷ Average fuel consumption.
- ▷ Current fuel consumption.
- ▷ Average speed.
- ▷ Date.
- ▷ Engine temperature display.
- ▷ Distance to destination.  
When destination guidance is activated in the navigation system.
- ▷ Time of arrival.  
When destination guidance is activated in the navigation system.
- ▷ Speed limit detection.

- ▷ Speed.

### Adjusting the info display

You can select what information from the on-board computer is to be displayed on the info display of the instrument cluster.

On the Control Display:

1.  "Settings"
2. "Instrument cluster"
3. Select the desired displays.

### Information in detail

#### Range

Displays the estimated cruising range available with the remaining fuel.

It is calculated based on your driving style over the last 20 miles/30 km.

#### GREEN info

Description of GREEN info, refer to page [167](#).

#### Average fuel consumption

This is calculated for the period while the engine is running.

The average fuel consumption is calculated for the distance traveled since the last reset by the on-board computer.

#### Average speed

Periods in which the vehicle is parked with the engine manually stopped are not included in the calculation of the average speed.

### Resetting average values



Press and hold PC button on blinker lever.

### Engine temperature display

Displays the current engine temperature, based on a combination of coolant and motor oil temperature. As soon as the optimum operating temperature has been attained, the indicator is in the center position.

If the engine oil or coolant, thus the engine, become too hot, a Check Control message is displayed.

Check the coolant level, refer to page [198](#).

### Distance to destination

The distance remaining to the destination is displayed if a destination is entered in the navigation system before the trip is started.

The distance to the destination is adopted automatically.

### Time of arrival

The estimated time of arrival is displayed if a destination is entered in the navigation system before the trip is started.

The time must be correctly set.

### Speed limit detection

Description of the speed limit detection, refer to page [82](#), function.


## Trip on-board computer

The vehicle features two types of on-board computers.

- ▷ "Onboard info": the values can be reset as often as necessary.
- ▷ "Trip computer": the values provide an overview of the current trip.

## Resetting the trip on-board computer


On the Control Display:

1.  "Vehicle info"
2. "Trip computer"
3. "Reset": all values are reset.  
"Automatically reset": all values are reset approx. 4 hours after the vehicle came to a standstill.

## Display on the Control Display


Display the on-board computer or trip on-board computer on the Control Display.

On the Control Display:

1.  "Vehicle info"
2. "Onboard info" or "Trip computer"

## Resetting the fuel consumption and speed

On the Control Display:

1.  "Vehicle info"
2. "Onboard info"
3. "Consumpt." or "Speed"
4. "Yes"

# DRIVING EXCITEMENT

## The concept



On the Control Display, sport instruments can be displayed, and the vehicle condition can be checked before the use of the SPORT program.

## Sport instruments



On the Control Display, values for power and torque are displayed.

## Displaying sport instruments

Via onboard monitor:

1.  "Vehicle info"
2. "Driving Excitement"
3.  "Sports instruments"

Via the Driving Dynamics Control

1. Activating SPORT.
2.  "Driving Excitement"
3.  "Sports instruments"

## Vehicle state



The following vehicle and surrounding area data are automatically checked and evaluated in succession:

- ▷ Range.
- ▷ Engine temperature.
- ▷ External temperature.
- ▷ SPORT program state.



Finally, a total evaluation of the vehicle state is displayed.

## Checking vehicle state

Via onboard monitor:

1.  "Vehicle info"
2. "Driving Excitement"
3.  "Vehicle and surroundings"

Via the Driving Dynamics Control

1. Activating SPORT.
2.  "Driving Excitement"
3.  "Vehicle and surroundings"

## SPEED WARNING


### The concept

Displays speed limit which, when reached, should cause a warning to be issued.

The warning is repeated if the vehicle speed drops below the set speed limit once by at least 3 mph/5 km/h.

### Displaying, setting or changing the limit


On the Control Display:

1.  "Settings"
2. "Speed"
3. "Warning at:"
4. Turn the controller until the desired limit is displayed.
5. Press the controller.

The speed limit is stored.


### Activating/deactivating the limit

On the Control Display:

1.  "Settings"
2. "Speed"
3. "Warning"
4. Press the controller.

### Setting your current speed as the limit

On the Control Display:


1.  "Settings"
2. "Speed"
3. "Select current speed"
4. Press the controller.

The current vehicle speed is stored as the limit.

## SETTINGS ON THE CONTROL DISPLAY


### Time

#### Setting the time zone

1.  "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Time zone:"
4. Select the desired time zone.


The time zone is stored.

#### Setting the time

1.  "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Time:"
4. Turn the controller until the desired hours are displayed.
5. Press the controller.
6. Turn the controller until the desired minutes are displayed.
7. Press the controller.

The time is stored.


#### Setting the time format

1.  "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Format:"
4. Select the desired format.

The time format is stored.

### Date


#### Setting the date

1.  "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Date:"
4. Turn the controller until the desired day is displayed.

5. Press the controller.
6. Make the necessary settings for the month and year.

The date is stored.

### Setting the date format


1.  "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Format:"
4. Select the desired format.

The date format is stored.

## Language

### Setting the language

To set the language on the Control Display:

1.  "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"
3. "Language:"
4. Select the desired language.

Settings are stored for the profile currently used.


### Setting the voice dialog

Voice dialog for the voice activation system, refer to page 27.

## Units of measurement

### Setting the units of measurement

To set the units for fuel consumption, route/distance and temperature:


1.  "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"
3. Select the desired menu item.
4. Select the desired unit.

Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

## Brightness

### Setting the brightness

To set the brightness of the Control Display:

1.  "Settings"
2. "Control display"
3. "Brightness"
4. Turn the controller until the desired brightness is set.
5. Press the controller.

Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

Depending on the light conditions, the brightness settings may not be clearly visible.

## LED RING ON THE CENTRAL INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

### The concept

The LED ring displays light animations to represent specific functions.

### Basic displays

Basic functions, for example the tachometer, can be set to be displayed continually if so desired.

### Event displays

Functions that are only displayed temporarily, for example the volume or temperature settings, can be set as event displays.

Several vehicle assistance functions can also be displayed on the LED ring. This display corresponds with the displays of the function in the respective display.

### Example: tachometer

Like the tachometer in the instrument cluster, the light animations of the tachometer's basic display show the current RPMs and the respective RPM warning margins.



## Display



- ▷ Arrow 1: current RPM.
- ▷ Arrow 2: prewarning field.
- ▷ Arrow 3: warning field.

### Switching on/off LED ring

1. ⚙️ "Settings"
2. "Center Instrument"
3. "Center Instrument"

### Adjusting the LED ring

1. ⚙️ "Settings"
2. "Center Instrument"
3. "Basic display" or "Event display"
4. Select desired setting.

### Setting the brightness

The brightness can be adjusted when night lighting is active in the instrument cluster.

1. ⚙️ "Settings"
2. "Center Instrument"
3. "Brightness"
4. Turn the controller.

Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

## HEAD-UP DISPLAY

### Overview



### The concept

This system projects important information into the driver's field of vision, e. g., the speed.

The driver can quickly absorb information and concentrate on the traffic situation.

### Information



#### CAUTION

The Head-up Display consists of sensitive components that can easily be scraped or damaged. There is risk of property damage. Do not place any objects on the Head-up Display, attach to system components or plug into the system. Do not move the moving parts manually. ◀



#### WARNING

When extending and retracting the projection screen of the Head-up Display, body parts can be jammed. There is risk of injuries. Make sure that the area of movement of the projection screen is clear during opening and closing. ◀

Follow the instructions for cleaning the Head-up Display, refer to page 223.

### Display visibility

The visibility of the displays in the Head-up Display is influenced by the following factors:

- ▷ Certain sitting positions.

- ▷ Objects on the cover of the Head-up Display.
- ▷ Sunglasses with certain polarization filters.
- ▷ Wet roads.
- ▷ Unfavorable light conditions.

### Switching on/off

When switching on, the projection lens of the Head-up Display is extended. When switching off, the projection lens of the Head-up Display is retracted again.



Press button.

## Display

### Overview


The following information is displayed on the Head-up Display:

- ▷ Speed.
- ▷ Navigation system.
- ▷ Check Control messages.
- ▷ Selection list from the instrument cluster.
- ▷ Driver assistance systems.

Some of this information is only displayed briefly as needed.

### Selecting displays in the Head-up Display

On the Control Display:

1.  "Settings"
2. "Head-Up Display"

3. "Displayed information"

4. Select the desired displays in the Head-up Display.


Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

### Setting the brightness

The brightness is automatically adjusted to the ambient brightness.

The basic setting can be adjusted manually.

On the Control Display:


1.  "Settings"
2. "Head-Up Display"
3. "Brightness"
4. Turn the controller until the desired brightness is set.
5. Press the controller.

When the low beams are activated, the brightness of the Head-up Display can be additionally influenced using the instrument lighting, refer to page 97.

Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

### Adjusting the height

On the Control Display:


1.  "Settings"
2. "Head-Up Display"
3. "Height"
4. Turn the controller until the desired height is reached.
5. Press the controller.

Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

### Setting the rotation

The screen of the Head-up Display can be rotated around its own axis.

On the Control Display:

1.  "Settings"
2. "Head-Up Display"
3. "Rotation"
4. Turn the controller until the desired setting is selected.
5. Press the controller.


Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

## John Cooper Works: Sport displays in the Head-up Display

### General information

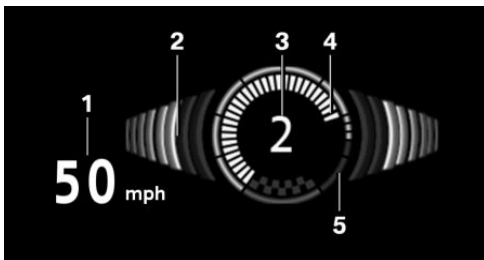
The sport displays in the Head-up Display assist with a sporty driving style.

### Switching on

1.  "Settings"
2. "Head-Up Display"
3. "Displayed information"
4. "Sport displays"

With navigation system: if the sport displays are switched on, no navigation content will be displayed on the Head-up Display.

### Display



- 1 Speed
- 2 Shift point indicator
- 3 Gear display

- 4 Current engine speed
- 5 Warning field, speed

## Shift point indicator

### The concept


Shift point indicator in the Head-up Display indicates the optimum shifting point. Thus, with a sporty driving style, the best possible vehicle acceleration is achieved.

### Functional requirements

- ▷ Steptronic transmission:
  - Manual mode M/S and if necessary the Dynamic Traction Control DTC are activated.
- ▷ Press the gas pedal all the way down.

### Switching on

Shift point indicators are displayed in the Head-up if the sport displays, refer to page 91, are switched on.

1.  "Settings"
2. "Head-Up Display"
3. "Displayed information"
4. "Sport displays"

### Display

Successive gray illuminated fields indicate the upcoming upshift moment.

As soon as the red fields light up, shift up immediately.

When the permitted maximum speed is reached, all shift point indicators flash.

When the maximum speed is exceeded, the supply of fuel is interrupted in order to protect the engine.

## CHRONO PACKAGE IN THE COCKPIT

### The concept

The Chrono package consists of three display instruments in the cockpit, where the engine oil pressure, the turbocharger boost, and the time are displayed. In addition, intermediate and total times can be measured using the stop watch.

The display elements of the Chrono package mainly support a sporty driving style, e.g. on racetracks.

### Overview



- 1 Engine oil pressure display
- 2 Display of turbocharger boost
- 3 Time/stop watch

### Engine oil pressure

The current engine oil pressure is displayed. At low temperatures, there can be an increase in the engine oil pressure.

### Turbocharger boost

The current boost of the engine's turbocharger is displayed.

### Stop watch

#### General information

The stop watch contains the following features:

- ▷ Measuring the total time.

- ▷ Measuring and storing of up to nine lap times.
- ▷ Displaying the time.
- ⌚ The red indicator light indicates that the stop watch is active.

### Overview, buttons



- ▷ MODE button, arrow 1.
- ▷ START/STOP button, arrow 2.
- ▷ RESET/LAP buttons, arrow 3.

### Displaying the measured times

The times measured using the stop watch are shown in minutes and seconds on the display. For times greater than 60 minutes, the numbers of hours and the minutes with seconds are alternatively displayed.

If the stop watch is running, the seconds are also shown using a seconds pointer in the scale of the display element.

### Measuring the total time

1. Press button, arrow 2, to start the stop watch.
2. Press button, arrow 2, again to stop the stop watch.

### Lap times

#### General information

It is possible to measure and store up to nine lap times. Older lap times are overwritten.

### Measuring and storing a lap time

1. Press button, arrow 2, to start the stop watch.
2. Press button, arrow 3, to measure and store a lap time.

The lap time is briefly shown in the display and via the seconds pointer of the stop watch, e.g., LAP 1 with the measured time. The stop watch continues running in the background.

3. If needed, press button, arrow 3, again to measure a further lap time.

### Calling up lap times

1. Press button, arrow 1, repeatedly until LAP 1 is shown on the display.
2. Press button, arrow 2, to call up the individual lap times.

### Deleting lap times

1. Press button, arrow 1, repeatedly until LAP 1 is shown on the display.
2. Press button, arrow 3, to delete all stored lap times.

### Displaying the time

The time is copied from the instrument cluster. Press button, arrow 1, repeatedly until the time is displayed.

# LIGHTS

## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.




## OVERVIEW





### Switches in the vehicle



The light switch elements is located next to the steering wheel.

### Light functions

Symbol	Function
	Rear fog lights
	Front fog lights
	Automatic headlight control

Symbol	Function
	Lights off Daytime running lights
	Parking lights
	Low beams
	Instrument lighting

## PARKING LIGHTS, CORNERING LIGHTS AND ROADSIDE PARKING LIGHTS

### General information

Position of switch:  ,  , 

If the driver door is opened with the ignition switched off, the exterior lighting is automatically switched off at these switch settings.

### Parking lights

Position of switch: 

The vehicle is illuminated on all sides.

Do not use the parking lights for extended periods; otherwise, the battery may become discharged and it would then be impossible to start the engine.

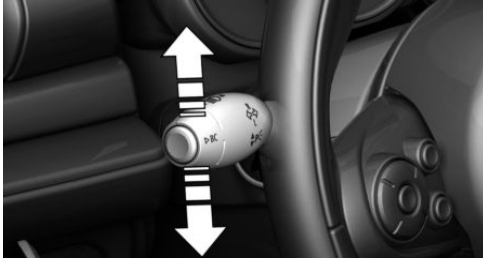
When parking, switch on the one-sided roadside parking lamp, refer to page [95](#).

### Low beams

Position of switch: 

The low beams light up when the ignition is switched on.

## Roadside parking lights



The vehicle can be illuminated on one side.

### Switching on



With the ignition switched off, press the lever either up or down past the resistance point for approx. 2 seconds.

### Switch off

Briefly press the lever to the resistance point in the opposite direction.


## WELCOME LIGHTS AND HEADLIGHT COURTESY DELAY FEATURE

### Welcome lights

Depending on the equipment, when switching off the vehicle, switch position  or .

The parking, low beam and interior lights light up briefly when unlocking the vehicle or depending on the ambient brightness.

### Activating/deactivating


1.  "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Welcome lights"

Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

## Headlight courtesy delay feature

The low beams stay lit for a short while if the headlight flasher is switched on after the vehicle's radio-ready state is switched off.

### Setting the duration

1.  "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Pathway lighting:"
4. Set length of time.

Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

## AUTOMATIC HEADLIGHT CONTROL

### The concept


The low beams are switched on and off automatically depending on the ambient brightness, e.g. in tunnels, in twilight or if there is precipitation.

### General information

A blue sky with the sun low on the horizon can cause the lights to be switched on.

When emerging from a tunnel during the day, the low beams are not switched off immediately but instead only after approx. 2 minutes.

### Activating

Position of switch: 

The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up when the low beams are switched on.

### System limits


The automatic headlamp control cannot serve as a substitute for your personal judgment of lighting conditions.

E. g. the sensors are unable to detect fog or hazy weather. To avoid safety risks under these

conditions, you should always switch on the lights manually.

## DAYTIME RUNNING LIGHTS


Position of switch: 0, , 

The daytime running lights light up when the ignition is switched on. After the ignition is switched off, the parking lights light up in position .

### Activating/deactivating

In some countries, daytime running lights are mandatory, so it may not be possible to deactivate the daytime running lights.

On the Control Display:

1.  "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Daytime running lamps"

Settings are stored for the remote control currently used.

## CORNERING LAMP

Position of switch: 

When going around corners, the cornering light also lights the interior area of the curve. Below a speed of approx. 25 mph/40 km/h when the turn signal is switched on and the steering angle is detected, there is automatic activation.

### Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed.

Cornering light is disrupted or failed. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

## HIGH-BEAM ASSISTANT



### The concept

When the low beams are activated, this system automatically switches the high beams on and off. The procedure is controlled by a camera on the front of the interior rearview mirror. The assistant ensures that the high beams are activated whenever the traffic situation allows. The driver can intervene at any time and switch the high beams on and off as usual. In the low speed range, the high beams are not switched on by the system.

### Activating



The High-beam Assistant can be activated when the low beams are activated.

1. Depending on the equipment, turn the light switch into position  or .
2. Press button on the turn signal lever, arrow.



The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up.

When the low beams are on, the lights are automatically brightened or dimmed.

The system responds to light from oncoming traffic and traffic driving ahead of you, and to adequate illumination, e.g., in towns and cities.



The blue indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up when the system switches on the high beams.



## Switching the high beams on and off manually



- ▷ High beams on, arrow 1.
- ▷ High beams off/headlight flasher, arrow 2.

The High-beam Assistant can be switched off when manually adjusting the light.

To reactivate the high-beam Assistant, press the button on the turn signal lever, refer to page 96.

### System limits

The High-beam Assistant cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment of when to use the high beams. Therefore, manually switch off the high beams in situations where required to avoid a safety risk.


The system is not fully functional in situations such as the following, and driver intervention may be necessary:

- ▷ In very unfavorable weather conditions, such as fog or heavy precipitation.
- ▷ When detecting poorly-lit road users such as pedestrians, cyclists, horseback riders and wagons; when driving close to train or ship traffic; and at animal crossings.
- ▷ In tight curves, on hilltops or in depressions, in cross traffic or half-observed oncoming traffic on freeways.
- ▷ In poorly-lit towns and cities and in the presence of highly reflective signs.
- ▷ When the windshield behind the interior rearview mirror is fogged over, dirty or covered with stickers, etc.

## FOG LIGHTS

### Front fog lights

The low beams must be switched on.


 Press button. The green indicator lamp lights up.

If the automatic headlight control, refer to page 95, is activated, the low beams will come on automatically when you switch on the front fog lights.

When the high beams or headlight flasher are activated, the front fog lights are not switched on.

### Rear fog lights

The low beams or front fog lights must be switched on.

 Press button. The yellow indicator lamp lights up.

If the automatic headlight control, refer to page 95, is activated, the low beams will come on automatically when you switch on the rear fog lights.

## INSTRUMENT LIGHTING

### Adjusting



The parking lights or low beams must be switched on to adjust the brightness.

Adjust the brightness with the thumbwheel.

## INTERIOR LIGHTS

### General information

The interior lights, footwell lights, access lights and courtesy lights are controlled automatically.

Thumb wheel for the instrument lighting controls brightness of some of these features.

### Overview



- 1 Interior lights
- 2 Reading lamp
- 3 Ambient light

### Switching the interior lights on and off



Press button.

To switch off permanently: press the button for approx. 3 seconds.

Switch back on: press button.

### Reading lights



Press button.


Reading lights are located in the front next to the interior light.

### Ambient light

Depending on your optional features lighting can be adjusted for some lights in the interior.

### Activating/deactivating

On the Control Display:

1.  "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Ambient:"

Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

### Changing color



Push the switch forward or back: manual color change.




Push and hold the switch forward or back: automatic color change. Push the switch again to end color changes.

### Setting the brightness

The brightness of the ambient light can be adjusted via the thumbwheel for the instrument lighting or on the Control Display.

On the Control Display:

1.  "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Brightness:"
4. Adjust the brightness.

# SAFETY

## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not

necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## AIRBAGS



- |                                 |               |
|---------------------------------|---------------|
| 1 Front airbag, driver          | 4 Side airbag |
| 2 Front airbag, front passenger | 5 Knee airbag |
| 3 Head airbag                   |               |

### Front airbags

Front airbags help protect the driver and front passenger by responding to frontal impacts in which safety belts alone would not provide adequate restraint.

### Side airbag

In a lateral impact, the side airbag supports the side of the body in the chest and lap area.

### Head airbag

In a lateral impact, the head airbag supports the head.

## Ejection Mitigation

The head airbag system is designed as an ejection mitigation countermeasure to reduce the likelihood of ejections of vehicle occupants through side windows during rollovers or side impact events.

## Knee airbag

The knee airbag supports the legs in a frontal impact.

## Protective action

Airbags are not triggered in every impact situation, e.g., in less severe accidents or rear-end collisions.

## Information for optimum effect of the airbags

### WARNING

If the seat position is incorrect or the deployment area of the airbags is impacted, the airbag system cannot protect as intended or cause additional injuries due to triggering. There is risk of injuries or danger to life. Observe the Information for optimum protective effect of the airbag system. ◀

- ▷ Keep at a distance from the airbags.
- ▷ Make sure that occupants keep their heads away from the side airbag.
- ▷ Always grasp the steering wheel on the steering wheel rim. Hold your hands at the 3 o'clock and 9 o'clock positions, to keep the risk of injury to your hands or arms as low as possible when the airbag is triggered.
- ▷ Make sure that the front passenger is sitting correctly, i.e., keeps his or her feet and legs in the floor area.
- ▷ There should be no persons, animals or objects between an airbag and a person.

- ▷ Do not apply adhesive materials to the airbag cover panels, do not cover them or modify them in any way.
- ▷ Dashboard and windshield on the front passenger side must stay clear - do not attach adhesive labels or coverings and do not attach brackets or cables, e. g., for GPS devices or mobile phones.
- ▷ Do not use the cover of the front airbag on the front passenger side as a storage area.
- ▷ Do not place slip covers, seat cushions or other objects on the front passenger seat that are not specifically suited for seats with integrated side airbags.
- ▷ Do not hang pieces of clothing, such as jackets, over the backrests.
- ▷ Never modify either the individual components or the wiring in the airbag system. This also applies to steering wheel covers, the dashboard, and the seats.
- ▷ Do not remove the airbag system.

Even when you follow all instructions very closely, injury from contact with the airbags cannot be ruled out in certain situations.

The ignition and inflation noise may lead to short-term and, in most cases, temporary hearing impairment in sensitive individuals.

Warnings and information on the airbags are also found on the sun visors.

## Functional readiness of the airbag system

### Information

#### WARNING

Individual components can be hot after triggering of the airbag system. There is risk of injuries. Do not touch individual components. ◀

#### WARNING

Improperly executed work can lead to failure, malfunction or unintentional triggering of the airbag system. In the case of a malfunc-

tion, the airbag system could not trigger as intended in the event of an accident despite respective accident severity. There is risk of injuries or danger to life. Have the airbag system checked, repaired, dismantled and scrapped by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. ◀

### Correct function



When the ignition is switched on, the warning lamp in the instrument cluster lights up briefly and thereby indicates the operational readiness of the entire airbag system and the belt tensioner.

### Airbag system malfunctioning

- ▷ Warning lamp does not come on when the ignition is turned on.
- ▷ The warning lamp lights up continuously.

### Automatic deactivation of the front-seat passenger airbags

#### The concept

The system reads if the front passenger seat is occupied by measuring the human body's resistance.

Front, knee and side airbag on the front passenger's side are either activated or deactivated.

#### Information

Before transporting a child on the front passenger seat, refer to the safety notes and instructions for children on the front passenger seat, see Children.



#### WARNING

To ensure the front-seat passenger airbag function, it must be detected, whether a person occupies the front passenger seat. The entire seat cushion area must be used for this purpose. There is risk of injuries or danger to

life. Make sure that the front passenger keeps his or her feet in the floor area. ◀

### Malfunction of the automatic deactivation system

When transporting older children and adults, the front-seat passenger airbags may be deactivated in certain sitting positions. In this case, the indicator lamp for the front-seat passenger airbags lights up.

In this case, change the sitting position so that the front-seat passenger airbags are activated and the indicator lamp goes out.

If it is not possible to activate the airbags, have the person sit in the rear.

To enable correct recognition of the occupied seat cushion

- ▷ Do not attach covers, cushions, ball mats or other items to the front passenger seat unless they are specifically determined to be safe for use on the front passenger seat.
- ▷ Do not place any electronic devices on the passenger seat if a child restraint system is to be installed on it.
- ▷ Do not place objects under the seat that could press against the seat from below.
- ▷ No moisture in or on the seat.

### Indicator lamp for the front-seat passenger airbags



The indicator lamp for the front-seat passenger airbags indicates the operating state of the front-seat passenger airbags.

The lamp indicates whether the airbags are either activated or deactivated.



▷ The indicator lamp lights up when a child is properly seated in a child restraint fixing system or when the seat is empty. The airbags on the front passenger side are not activated.

▷ The indicator lamp does not light up when, e.g., a correctly seated person of sufficient size is detected on the seat. The airbags on the front passenger side are activated.

### Detected child seats

The system generally detects children seated in a child seat, particularly in child seats required by NHTSA when the vehicle was manufactured. After installing a child seat, make sure that the indicator lamp for the front-seat passenger airbags lights up. This indicates that the child seat has been detected and the front-seat passenger airbags are not activated.

### Strength of the driver's and front-seat passenger airbag

The explosive power that activates driver's/front passenger's airbags very much depends on the positions of the driver's/front passenger's seat.

To maintain the accuracy of this function over the long-term, calibrate the front seats as soon as a relevant Check Control message is displayed. A message also appears on the Control Display.

### Calibrating the front seats



#### WARNING

There is risk of jamming when moving the seats. There is risk of injuries or risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment. ◀

An appropriate Check Control message is displayed.

1. Move the respective seat all the way forward.
2. Move the respective seat forward again. It moves forward briefly.
3. Readjust the seat to the desired position.

The calibration procedure is completed when the Check Control message disappears.

If the message continues to be displayed, repeat the calibration.

If the message does not disappear after a repeat calibration, have the system checked as soon as possible.

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITOR TPM

### The concept

The system monitors tire inflation pressure in the four mounted tires. The system warns you if there is a significant loss of pressure in one or more tires. For this purpose, sensors in the tire valves measure the tire inflation pressure.

### Information

With use of the system observe further information found under Tire inflation pressure, refer to page 178.

### Functional requirements

The system must have been reset with the correct tire inflation pressure; otherwise, reliable signaling of tire pressure loss is not assured.



Reset the system after each adjustment of the tire inflation pressure and after every tire or wheel change.

Always use wheels with TPM electronics to ensure that the system will operate properly.

## Status display

The current status of the Tire Pressure Monitor TPM can be displayed on the Control Display, e.g., whether or not the TPM is active.

On the Control Display:

1.  "Vehicle info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3.  "Tire Pressure Monitor (TPM)"

The status is displayed.

## Status control display

Tire and system status are indicated by the color of the tires and a text message on the Control Display.

### All wheels green

System is active and will issue a warning relative to the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

### One wheel is yellow

A flat tire or major drop in inflation pressure in the indicated tire.

### All wheels are yellow

A flat tire or major drop in inflation pressure in several tires.

### Wheels, gray

The system cannot detect a flat tire due to a malfunction.



## Status information

The status control display additionally shows the current tire inflation pressures. It shows the actual values read; they may vary depending on driving style or weather conditions.

## Carry out reset

Reset the system after each adjustment of the tire inflation pressure and after every tire or wheel change.

On the Control Display and on the vehicle:

1.  "Vehicle info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3.  "Perform reset"
4. Start the engine - do not drive off.
5. Reset the tire inflation pressure using "Perform reset".
6. Drive away.

The tires are shown in gray and the status is displayed.

After driving faster than 19 mph/30 km/h for a short period, the set tire inflation pressures are accepted as reference values. The resetting process is completed automatically while driving. After successful completion of the reset, the tires appear in green on the Control Display and "Tire Pressure Monitor (TPM) active" is displayed.

The progress of the reset is displayed.

You may interrupt this trip at any time. When you continue the reset resumes automatically.

## Low tire pressure message



The yellow warning lamp lights up. A Check Control message is displayed.

- ▶ There is a flat tire or a major loss in tire inflation pressure.
  - ▶ A reset of the system was not carried out after a wheel was changed. The system therefore issues a warning based on the tire pressures before the last reset.
1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
  2. Check whether the vehicle is fitted with regular tires or run-flat tires.

Run-flat tires, refer to page 187, are labeled with a circular symbol containing the letters RSC marked on the tire's sidewall.

**WARNING**

A damaged regular tire with low or missing tire inflation pressure impacts handling, such as steering and braking response. Run-flat tires can maintain limited stability. There is risk of an accident. Do not continue driving if the vehicle is not equipped with run-flat tires. Observe the information on run-flat tires and continued driving with these tires. ◀

A low tire inflation pressure might turn on DSC Dynamic Stability Control.

**Actions in the event of a flat tire****Normal tires**

1. Identify the damaged tire.

Do this by checking the air pressure in all four tires.

The tire pressure gauge of the Mobility System, refer to page 188, can be used for this purpose.

If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Tire Pressure Monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.

If identification of flat tire damage is not possible, please contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

2. Fix the flat tire using the Mobility System, refer to page 188.

Use of tire sealant, e.g., the Mobility System, may damage the TPM wheel electronics. In this case, have the electronics checked at the next opportunity and have them replaced if needed.

**Run-flat tires****Maximum speed**

You may continue driving with a damaged tire at speeds up to 50 mph/80 km/h.

**Continued driving with a flat tire**

If continuing to drive with a damaged tire:

1. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.
3. Check the air pressure in all four tires at the next opportunity.

If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is shown to be correct, it is possible that the Tire Pressure Monitor did not perform a reset. Then perform the reset.

Possible driving distance with complete loss of tire inflation pressure:

The possible driving distance after a loss of tire inflation pressure depends on cargo load, driving style and road conditions.

A vehicle with an average load has a possible driving range of approx. 50 miles/80 km.

A vehicle with a damaged tire reacts differently, e.g., it has reduced lane stability during braking, a longer braking distance and different self-steering properties. Adjust your driving style accordingly. Avoid abrupt steering maneuvers or driving over obstacles, e.g., curbs, potholes, etc.

Because the possible driving distance depends on how the vehicle is used during the trip, the actual distance may be shorter or longer depending on the driving speed, road conditions, external temperature, cargo load, etc.

**WARNING**

Your vehicle handles differently when a run-flat tire is damaged and has low or missing tire inflation pressure, e.g., your lane stability is reduced when braking, braking distances are longer and the self-steering properties will change. There is risk of an accident.

Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h. ◀



### Final tire failure

Vibrations or loud noises while driving can indicate the final failure of a tire.

Reduce speed and stop; otherwise, pieces of the tire could come loose and cause an accident.

Do not continue driving. Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

### Required inflation pressure check message

A Check Control message is displayed in the following situations

- ▷ The system has detected a wheel change, but no reset was done.
- ▷ Inflation was not carried out according to specifications.
- ▷ The tire inflation pressure has fallen below the level of the last confirmation.

In this case:

- ▷ Check the tire pressure and correct as needed.
- ▷ Carry out a reset of the system after a tire change.

### System limits

The system does not function properly if a reset has not been carried out, e.g., a flat tire is reported though tire inflation pressures are correct.

The tire inflation pressure depends on the tire's temperature. Driving or exposure to the sun will increase the tire's temperature, thus increasing the tire inflation pressure. The tire inflation pressure is reduced when the tire temperature falls again. These circumstances may cause a warning when temperatures fall very sharply.

The system cannot indicate sudden serious tire damage caused by external circumstances.

### Malfunction



The yellow warning lamp flashes and then lights up continuously. A Check Control message is displayed. No flat tire or loss of tire pressure can be detected.

Examples and recommendations in the following situations:

- ▷ A wheel without TPM electronics is mounted, e.g. emergency wheel: Have it checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop as needed.
- ▷ Malfunction: Have system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
- ▷ TPM was unable to complete the reset. Reset the system again.
- ▷ Interference through systems or devices with the same radio frequency: After leaving the area of the interference, the system automatically becomes active again.

### Declaration according to NHTSA/FMVSS 138 Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Each tire, including the spare (if provided) should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.) As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and

tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability. Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale. Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

## FTM FLAT TIRE MONITOR

### The concept

The system does not measure the actual inflation pressure in the tires.

It detects a tire inflation pressure loss by comparing the rotational speeds of the individual wheels while moving.

In the event of a tire inflation pressure loss, the diameter and therefore the rotational speed of the corresponding wheel changes. This will be detected and reported as a flat tire.



### Functional requirements

The system must have been initialized when the tire inflation pressure was correct; otherwise, reliable flagging of a flat tire is not assured. Initialize the system after each correction of the tire inflation pressure and after every tire or wheel change.

### Status display

The current status of the Flat Tire Monitor can be displayed on the Control Display, e.g., whether or not the FTM is active.

On the Control Display:

1.  "Vehicle info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3.  "Flat Tire Monitor (FTM)"



The status is displayed.

### Initialization

When initializing the once set inflation tire pressures serve as reference values in order to detect a flat tire. Initialization is started by confirming the inflation pressures.

Do not initialize the system when driving with snow chains.

On the Control Display:

1.  "Vehicle info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3.  "Perform reset"
4. Start the engine - do not drive off.
5. Start the initialization with "Perform reset".
6. Drive away.

The initialization is completed while driving, which can be interrupted at any time.

The initialization automatically continues when driving resumes.

### Indication of a flat tire



The yellow warning lamp lights up. A Check Control message is displayed.

There is a flat tire or a major loss in tire inflation pressure.

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Check whether the vehicle is fitted with normal tires or run-flat tires.

Run-flat tires, refer to page 187, are labeled with a circular symbol containing the letters RSC marked on the tire's sidewall.



#### WARNING

A damaged regular tire with low or missing tire inflation pressure impacts handling, such as steering and braking response. Run-flat tires can maintain limited stability. There is risk of an accident. Do not continue driving if the vehicle is not equipped with run-flat tires. Observe the information on run-flat tires and continued driving with these tires. ◀

When a flat tire is indicated, DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on if needed.

### System limits

A natural, even tire inflation pressure loss in all four tires will not be recognized. Therefore, check the tire inflation pressure regularly.

Sudden serious tire damage caused by external circumstances cannot be recognized in advance.

The system could be delayed or malfunction in the following situations:

- ▶ When the system has not been initialized.
- ▶ When driving on a snowy or slippery road surface.
- ▶ Sporty driving style: spinning traction wheels, high lateral acceleration (drifting).
- ▶ When driving with snow chains.

## Actions in the event of a flat tire

### Normal tires

1. Identify the damaged tire.

Do this by checking the air pressure in all four tires.

The tire pressure gauge of the Mobility System, refer to page 188, can be used for this purpose.

If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Flat Tire Monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.

If identification of flat tire damage is not possible, please contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

2. Fix the flat tire using the Mobility System, refer to page 188.

### Run-flat tires

#### Maximum speed

You may continue driving with a damaged tire at speeds up to 50 mph/80 km/h.

#### Continued driving with a flat tire

If continuing to drive with a damaged tire:

1. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.
3. Check the air pressure in all four tires at the next opportunity.

If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Flat Tire Monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.

Possible driving distance with complete loss of tire inflation pressure:

The possible driving distance after a loss of tire inflation pressure depends on cargo load, driving style and road conditions.

A vehicle with an average load has a possible driving range of approx. 50 miles/80 km.

A vehicle with a damaged tire reacts differently, e.g., it has reduced lane stability during braking, a longer braking distance and different self-steering properties. Adjust your driving style accordingly. Avoid abrupt steering maneuvers or driving over obstacles, e.g., curbs, potholes, etc.

Because the possible driving distance depends on how the vehicle is used during the trip, the actual distance may be shorter or longer depending on the driving speed, road conditions, external temperature, cargo load, etc.

#### WARNING

Your vehicle handles differently when a run-flat tire is damaged and has low or missing tire inflation pressure, e.g., your lane stability is reduced when braking, braking distances are longer and the self-steering properties will change. There is risk of an accident.

Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h. ◀

#### Final tire failure

Vibrations or loud noises while driving can indicate the final failure of a tire.

Reduce speed and stop; otherwise, pieces of the tire could come loose and cause an accident.

Do not continue driving. Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

## INTELLIGENT SAFETY

### The concept

Intelligent Safety enables central operation of the driver assistance system.

The intelligent safety systems can help prevent an imminent collision.

- ▶ Front-end collision warning with City Braking function, refer to page 109.
- ▶ Pedestrian warning with City Braking function, refer to page 112.

### Information

#### WARNING

Indicators and warnings do not relieve from the personal responsibility. Due to system limits, warnings or reactions of the system may not be output or they may be output too late or incorrectly. There is risk of an accident. Adjust the driving style to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively interfere in the respective situations. ◀

#### WARNING

Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated, e.g. approach control warning with light braking function. There is risk of an accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing. ◀

### Overview

#### Button in the vehicle



#### Intelligent Safety button

### Switching on/off

Some Intelligent Safety systems are automatically active after every departure. Some Intelli-

gent Safety systems activate according to the last setting.



Press button briefly:

- ▶ The menu for the intelligent safety system is displayed. The systems are individually switched off according to their respective settings.
- ▶ LED lights up orange or goes out respective to their individual settings.

Adjust as needed. Individual settings are stored for the profile currently used.



Press button again:

- ▶ All Intelligent Safety systems are activated.
- ▶ The LED lights up green.



Hold down button:

- ▶ All Intelligent Safety systems are turned off.
- ▶ The LED goes out.

## FRONT-END COLLISION WARNING WITH CITY BRAKING FUNCTION

### The concept

The system can help prevent accidents. If an accident cannot be prevented, the system will help reduce the collision speed.

The system sounds a warning before an imminent collision and actuates brakes independently if needed.

The automatic braking intervention is done with limited force and duration.

The system is controlled via a camera in the base of the mirror.

The front-end collision warning is available even if cruise control has been deactivated.

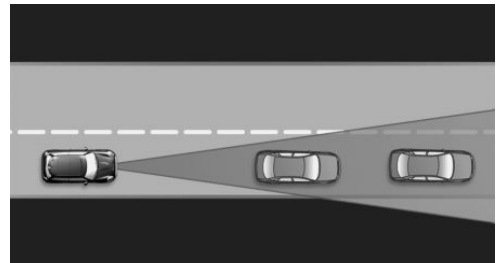
With the vehicle approaching another vehicle intentionally, the collision warning and braking are delayed in order to avoid false system reactions.

### General information

The system warns at two levels of an imminent danger of collision at speeds from approx. 3 mph/5 km/h. Time of warnings may vary with the current driving situation.

Appropriate braking kicks in at speeds of up to 35 mph/60 km/h.

### Detection range



It responds to objects if they are detected by the system.

### Information



#### WARNING

Indicators and warnings do not relieve from the personal responsibility. Due to system limits, warnings or reactions of the system may not be output or they may be output too late or incorrectly. There is risk of an accident. Adjust the driving style to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively interfere in the respective situations. ◀



#### WARNING


Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated, e.g. approach control warning with light braking function. There is risk of an accident. Switch

all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing. ◀

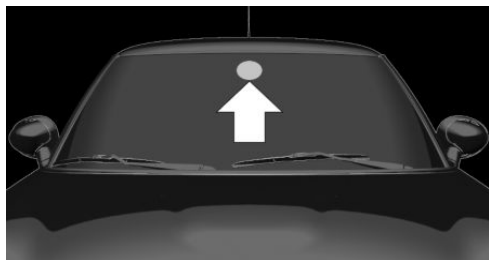
## Overview

### Button in the vehicle



 Intelligent Safety button

### Camera



The camera is installed near the interior rearview mirror.


Keep the windshield in the area behind the interior rearview mirror clean and clear.

### Switching on/off

#### Switching on automatically


The system is automatically active after every driving-off.

#### Switching on/off manually


 Press button briefly:

- ▶ The menu for the intelligent safety system is displayed. The systems are individually switched off according to their respective settings.
- ▶ LED lights up orange or goes out respective to their individual settings.

Adjust as needed. Individual settings are stored for the profile currently used.

 Press button again:


- ▶ All Intelligent Safety systems are activated.
- ▶ The LED lights up green.

 Hold down button:

- ▶ All Intelligent Safety systems are turned off.
- ▶ The LED goes out.

### Setting the warning time

The warning time can be set via the onboard monitor.



1.  "Settings"
2. "Frontal Coll. Warning"
3. Activate the desired warning time on the Control Display.

The selected warning time is stored for the profile currently used.

### Warning with braking function

#### Display

If a collision with a recognized vehicle is imminent a warning symbol appears in the instrument cluster and in the Head-Up Display.

Symbol	Measure
	Symbol lights up red: prewarning. Brake and increase distance.
	Symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning. You are requested to intervene by braking or make an evasive maneuver.

### Prewarning

This warning is issued, e.g., when there is the impending danger of a collision or the distance to the vehicle ahead is too small.

The driver must intervene actively when there is a prewarning.

### Acute warning with braking function

Acute warning is displayed in case of the imminent danger of a collision when the vehicle approaches another object at a relatively high differential speed.

The driver must intervene actively when there is an acute warning. If necessary, the driver is assisted by a minor automatic braking intervention in a possible risk of collision.

Acute warnings can also be triggered without previous forewarning.

### Braking intervention

The warning prompts the driver himself/herself to react. During a warning, the maximum braking force is used. Premise for the brake booster is sufficiently quick and sufficiently hard stepping on the brake pedal. The system can assist with some braking intervention if there is risk of a collision. At low speeds vehicles may thus come to a complete stop.

Manual transmission: During a braking intervention up to a complete stop, the engine may be shut down.

The braking intervention is executed only if DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on.

The braking intervention can be interrupted by stepping on the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

Object detection can be restricted. Limitations of the detection range and functional restrictions are to be considered.

### System limits

#### Detection range

The system's detection potential is limited.

Thus a system reaction might not come or might come late.

E. g. the following situations may not be detected:

- ▷ Slow moving vehicles when you approach them at high speed.
- ▷ Vehicles that suddenly swerve in front of you, or sharply decelerating vehicles.
- ▷ Vehicles with an unusual rear appearance.
- ▷ Two-wheeled vehicles ahead of you.

#### Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- ▷ In heavy fog, rain, sprayed water or snowfall.
- ▷ In tight curves.
- ▷ If the field of view of the camera or the front windshield are dirty or covered.
- ▷ If the driving stability control systems are deactivated, e.g. DSC OFF.
- ▷ Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine, via the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.
- ▷ If there are constant blinding effects because of oncoming light, e. g., from the sun low in the sky.

## Warning sensitivity

The more sensitive the warning settings are, the more warnings are displayed. However, there may also be an excess of false warnings.

## PEDESTRIAN WARNING WITH CITY BRAKING FUNCTION

### The concept

The system can help prevent accidents with pedestrians.

The system issues a warning in the city driving speed area if there is imminent danger of a collision with pedestrians and includes a braking function.

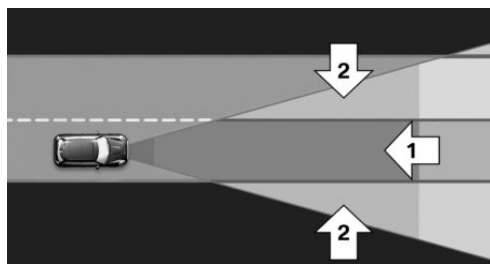
A camera at the base of the rearview mirror controls the system.

### General information

With sufficient brightness, the system warns about possible collision danger with pedestrians starting at approx. 6 mph/10 km/h to approx. 35 mph/60 km/h and assists with braking before a collision.

Under those circumstances it reacts to people who are within the detection range of the system.

### Detection range



The detection area in front of the vehicle is divided into two areas

- ▷ Central area, arrow 1, directly in front of the vehicle.
- ▷ Expanded area, arrow 2, to the right and left.

A collision is imminent if pedestrians are located within the central area. A warning is issued about pedestrians who are located within the extended area only if they are moving in the direction of the central area.

### Information



#### WARNING

Indicators and warnings do not relieve from the personal responsibility. Due to system limits, warnings or reactions of the system may not be output or they may be output too late or incorrectly. There is risk of an accident. Adjust the driving style to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively interfere in the respective situations. ◀



#### WARNING

Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated, e.g. approach control warning with light braking function. There is risk of an accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing. ◀

### Overview

#### Button in the vehicle

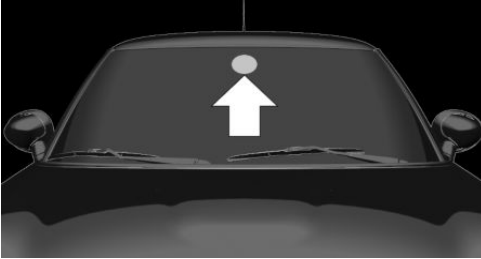






Intelligent Safety button

## Camera



The camera is installed near the interior rear-view mirror.

Keep the windshield in the area behind the interior rearview mirror clean and clear.

## Switching on/off

### Switching on automatically

The system is automatically active after every driving-off.

### Switching on/off manually



Press button briefly:

- ▷ The menu for the intelligent safety system is displayed. The systems are individually switched off according to their respective settings.
- ▷ LED lights up orange or goes out respective to their individual settings.

Adjust as needed. Individual settings are stored for the profile currently used.



Press button again:

- ▷ All Intelligent Safety systems are activated.
- ▷ The LED lights up green.



Hold down button:

- ▷ All Intelligent Safety systems are turned off.
- ▷ The LED goes out.

## Warning with braking function

### Display

If a collision with a person detected in this way is imminent, a warning symbol appears on the instrument cluster and in the Head-up Display.



The red symbol is displayed and a signal sounds.

Intervene immediately by braking or make an evasive maneuver.

### Braking intervention

The warning prompts the driver himself/herself to react. During a warning, the maximum braking force is used. Premise for the brake booster is sufficiently quick and sufficiently hard stepping on the brake pedal. The system can assist with some braking intervention if there is risk of a collision. At low speeds vehicles may thus come to a complete stop.

Manual transmission: During a braking intervention up to a complete stop, the engine may be shut down.

The braking intervention is executed only if DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on.

The braking intervention can be interrupted by stepping on the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

Object detection can be restricted. Limitations of the detection range and functional restrictions are to be considered.

## System limits

### Detection range

The detection potential of the camera is limited.

Thus a warning might not be issued or be issued late.

E. g. the following situations may not be detected:

- ▷ Partially covered pedestrians.
- ▷ Pedestrians that are not detected as such because of the viewing angle or contour.
- ▷ Pedestrians outside of the detection range.
- ▷ Pedestrians having a body size less than 32 in/80 cm.

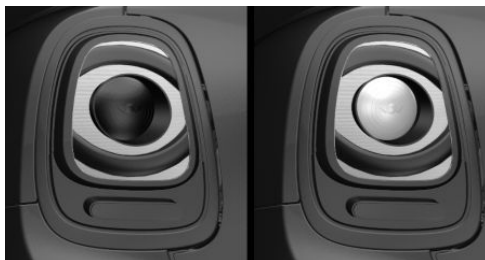
### Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional or may not be available in the following situations:

- ▷ In heavy fog, rain, sprayed water or snow-fall.
- ▷ In tight curves.
- ▷ If the field of view of the camera or the front windshield are dirty or covered.
- ▷ If the driving stability control systems are deactivated, e.g. DSC OFF.
- ▷ Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine, via the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.
- ▷ If there are constant blinding effects because of oncoming light, e. g., from the sun low in the sky.
- ▷ When it is dark outside.

## BRAKE FORCE DISPLAY

### The concept



- ▷ During normal brake application, the brake lights light up.
- ▷ During heavy brake application, the flashers light up in addition.

## POSTCRASH

In the event of an accident, the system can bring the car to a halt automatically without intervention by the driver in certain situations. This can reduce the risk of a further collision and the consequences thereof.

Depressing the brake pedal can cause the vehicle to brake harder. This interrupts automatic braking. Destepping on the gas pedal also interrupts automatic braking.

After coming to a halt, the brake is released automatically. Secure the vehicle against rolling.

# DRIVING STABILITY CONTROL SYSTEMS

## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM ABS

ABS prevents locking of the wheels during braking.

The vehicle contains its steering power even during full brake applications, thus increasing active safety.

ABS is operational every time you start the engine.

## BRAKE ASSISTANT

When you apply the brakes rapidly, this system automatically produces the greatest possible braking force boost. It reduces the braking distance to a minimum during emergency stop.

This system utilizes all of the benefits provided by ABS.

Do not reduce the pressure on the brake pedal for the duration of the emergency stop.

## DSC DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL

### The concept

DSC prevents traction loss in the power wheels when driving off and accelerating.

DSC also recognizes unstable vehicle conditions such as fishtailing or nose-diving. Within the physical limits DSC helps to keep the vehicle on a steady course by reducing engine speed and by applying brakes to the individual wheels.

### Information

Adapt your driving style to the situation, for an appropriate driving style is always the responsibility of the driver.

The laws of physics cannot be repealed, not even with DSC.

Therefore, do not reduce the additional safety margin by driving in a risky manner.



### WARNING

When driving with roof load, e.g. with roof-mounted luggage rack, driving safety may not be ensured in driving-critical situations due to the elevated center of gravity. There is risk of accidents or risk of property damage. Do not deactivate Dynamic Stability Control DSC when driving with roof load. ◀

### Indicator/warning lights



The indicator lamp flashes: DSC controls the drive and braking forces.


The indicator lamp lights up: DSC has failed.

## Deactivating DSC: DSC OFF

When DSC is deactivated, driving stability is reduced during acceleration and when driving in curves.


To increase vehicle stability, activate DSC again as soon as possible.

### Deactivating DSC

 Press and hold this button but not longer than approx. 10 seconds, until the indicator lamp for DSC OFF lights up in the instrument cluster and displays DSC OFF.


The DSC system is switched off.

### Activating DSC

 Press button. DSC OFF and the DSC OFF indicator lamp go out.

### Indicator/warning lights

When DSC is deactivated, DSC OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster.

 The indicator lamp lights up: DSC is deactivated.

### Automatic activation

When DSC is deactivated, automatic activation occurs in the following situations:

- ▷ The vehicle has a flat tire.
- ▷ When activating cruise control in TRACTION or DSC OFF mode.

## DTC DYNAMIC TRACTION CONTROL

### The concept

The DTC system is a version of the DSC where forward momentum is optimized.

The system ensures maximum headway on special road conditions or loose road surfaces, e.g., unplowed snowy roads, but with somewhat limited driving stability.

Activating the Dynamic Traction Control DTC provides maximum traction. Driving stability is limited during acceleration and when driving in curves.


Therefore drive with appropriate caution.

You may find it useful to briefly activate DTC under the following special circumstances:


- ▷ When driving in slush or on uncleared, snow-covered roads.
- ▷ When freeing vehicle from deep snow or driving off from loose grounds.
- ▷ When driving with snow chains.

### Deactivating/activating DTC Dynamic Traction Control

#### Activating DTC

 Press button. TRACTION is displayed in the instrument cluster and the indicator lamp for DSC OFF lights up.

#### Deactivating DTC

 Press button again. TRACTION and the DSC OFF indicator lamp go out.

## PERFORMANCE CONTROL

Performance Control enhances the agility of the vehicle.

To increase maneuverability, with a correspondingly sporty driving style, wheels are braked individually.

## DYNAMIC DAMPING CONTROL

### The concept

The tuning of the suspension can be changed with the system.

### Programs

The system offers several different programs. Select the programs via the Driving Dynamics Control, refer to page 117.

### MID/GREEN

Balanced tuning of the shock absorbers for more comfort.

### SPORT


Consistently sporty tuning of the shock absorbers for greater driving agility.

## DRIVING DYNAMICS CONTROL

### The concept

The Driving Dynamics Control helps to fine-tune the vehicle's settings and features. Choose between three different programs. Driving Dynamics Control will activate the particular program.

### Operating the programs

Driving Dynamics Control	Program
	MID
	GREEN
	SPORT

### MID

For balanced tuning.

With each starting operation, MID is activated using the Start/Stop button.

### GREEN

GREEN, refer to page 165, provides consistent tuning to maximize range.

### Activating GREEN

Turn Driving Dynamics Control to the right until GREEN is displayed in the instrument cluster.

### Configuring GREEN

#### Via the Driving Dynamics Control


1. Activate GREEN.
2. "Configure GREEN"
3. Configure the program.

This configuration is retrieved when GREEN is activated.

#### Via onboard monitor:

1.  "Settings"
2. "GREEN Mode"

or

1.  "Settings"
2. "Driving mode"
3. "Configure GREEN"

Configure the program.

This configuration is retrieved when GREEN is activated.

### SPORT

Consistently sporty tuning of the engine control for greater driving agility.

With the appropriate equipment, the tuning of the suspension also changes and SPORT can be individually configured.

The configuration is stored for the profile currently used.

## Activating SPORT

Turn Driving Dynamics Control to the left until SPORT is displayed in the instrument cluster.

## Configuring SPORT


Depending on your vehicle's optional features, when the display is activated on the Control Display, the SPORT driving mode can be configured for individual specifications.

Activating SPORT.

Select "Configure SPORT".

Configure the program.

SPORT can also be configured before it is activated:

1.  "Settings"
2. "Driving mode"
3. "Configure SPORT"

This configuration is retrieved when SPORT is activated.

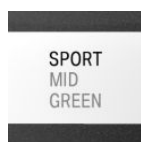
## Configuring driving program

Settings can be made for the following driving programs in Driving mode:

- ▷ GREEN, refer to page 117.
- ▷ SPORT, refer to page 117.

## Displays

### Program selection



With Driving Dynamics Control turned on a list of programs is displayed and can be selected.


### Selected program



The instrument cluster displays the selected program.

## Display on the onboard monitor

Program changes can be displayed on the onboard monitor.

1.  "Settings"
2. "Control display"
3. "Driving mode info"

## DRIVE-OFF ASSISTANT

This system supports driving off on inclines. The parking brake is not required.

1. Hold the vehicle in place with the foot brake.
2. Release the foot brake and drive off without delay.

After the foot brake is released, the vehicle is held in place for approx. 2 seconds.

For vehicles with respective equipment versions, the possible holding duration amounts to 2 minutes.

# DRIVING COMFORT

## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## CAMERA-BASED CRUISE CONTROL

### The concept

Use this system to select a desired speed that the vehicle will maintain automatically on clear roads.

To the extent possible, the system automatically adjusts the speed to a slower vehicle ahead of you.

A camera on the interior rear view mirror is used to detect vehicles driving ahead.

The distance that the vehicle maintains to the vehicle ahead of you can be varied.

For safety reasons, it depends on the speed.

To maintain a certain distance, the system automatically decelerates, applies the brakes lightly, or accelerates again if the vehicle ahead begins moving faster.

As soon as the road is clear, the vehicle accelerates to the desired speed.

The speed is also maintained downhill, but may not be maintained uphill if engine power is insufficient.

### General information

The system is functional at speeds beginning at approx. 20 mph/30 km/h.

Active cruise control is paused below approx. 20 mph/30 km/h.

The system does not brake to a stop.

Depending on the driving program, refer to page 117, set, the characteristics of the cruise control in particular areas can change.

### Information



#### WARNING

The system does not relieve from the personal responsibility to correctly assess the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is risk of an accident. Adjust the driving style to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively interfere in the respective situations. ◀





#### WARNING

The system does not relieve from the personal responsibility to correctly assess visibility and traffic situation. There is risk of an accident. Adjust the driving style to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively interfere in the respective situations. ◀

### Overview

#### Buttons on the steering wheel

Press button	Function
	Cruise control on/off, refer to page 120
	Store/maintain speed, refer to page 121

Press button	Function
	Pause cruise control, refer to page 120
	Continue cruise control with the last setting, refer to page 121
	Reduce distance, refer to page 121
	Increase distance, refer to page 121
	Increase, maintain, and store speed, refer to page 121
	Reduce, maintain, and store speed, refer to page 121



Pause cruise control, refer to page 120

Continue cruise control with the last setting, refer to page 121



Reduce distance, refer to page 121



Increase distance, refer to page 121



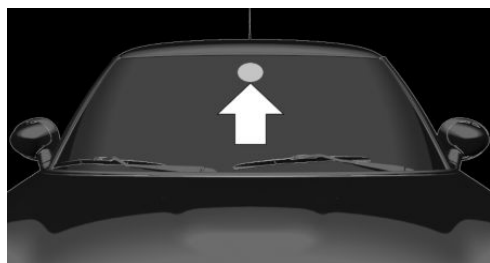
Increase, maintain, and store speed, refer to page 121



Reduce, maintain, and store speed, refer to page 121

Buttons are arranged according to vehicle's series, optional features and country specifications.

## Camera



The camera is installed near the interior rearview mirror.

Keep the windshield in the area behind the interior rearview mirror clean and clear.

## Switching on/off and interrupting cruise control

### Switching on



Press button on the steering wheel.



Display in the instrument cluster lights up.



Display in the instrument cluster lights up. The current speed is adopted as desired speed and displayed with symbol.

Cruise control is active and maintains the set speed.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control will be switched on if needed.

### Switch off



Press button on the steering wheel.

The displays go out. The stored desired speed is deleted.

### Interrupting



Press button on the steering wheel.

The system is automatically interrupted in the following situations:

- ▷ When the brakes are applied.
- ▷ If the clutch pedal is depressed for a few seconds or released while a gear is not engaged.
- ▷ If selector lever position N is set.
- ▷ When DTC Dynamic Traction Control is activated or DSC is deactivated.
- ▷ When DSC is actively controlling stability.
- ▷ If the detection range of the camera is impaired, e.g., by soiling, heavy precipitation or glare effects from the sun.
- ▷ If the vehicle in front decelerates below a speed of approx. 20 mph/30 km/h.



## Maintaining, storing, and changing the speed

### Information



#### WARNING

The desired speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is risk of an accident. Adjust the desired speed to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively interfere in the respective situations. ◀



#### WARNING

Risk of accident due to too high speed differences to other vehicles, e.g. in the following situations:

- ▶ When fast approaching a slowly moving vehicle.
- ▶ Suddenly swerving vehicle onto the own lane.
- ▶ When fast approaching standing vehicles.



There is risk of injuries or danger to life. Watch traffic closely and actively interfere in the respective situations. ◀

## Maintaining/storing the speed



Press button.

Or:



Press  or  button in the interrupted state.

When the system is switched on, the current speed is maintained and stored as the desired speed.







The speed is displayed on the symbol. DSC Dynamic Stability Control will be switched on if needed.



## Changing the speed

 or  button: press until the desired speed is set.

If active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle reaches the stored speed when the road is clear.

▶  or  button: each time it is pressed to the point of resistance, the desired speed increases or decreases by approx. 1 mph/1 km/h.

▶  or  button: each time it is pressed past the point of resistance, the desired speed increases or decreases by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h.

 or  button: hold down to repeat the corresponding action.

## Distance



#### WARNING

The system does not relieve from the personal responsibility. Due to the system limits, braking can be late. There is risk of accidents or risk of property damage. Be aware to the traffic situation at all times. Adjust the distance to the traffic and weather conditions and maintain the prescribed safety distance, possibly by braking. ◀

## Reduce distance



Press button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.



The set distance is briefly displayed in the left part of the instrument cluster.

## Increase distance



Press button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.



The set distance is briefly displayed in the left part of the instrument cluster.

## Continue cruise control

### While driving



Press button with the system interrupted. Cruise control is continued with

the saved values. The selected distance is briefly displayed in the info display.

In the following cases, the stored speed value is deleted and cannot be called up again:


- ▷ When the system is switched off.
- ▷ When the ignition is switched off.


### Changing between cruise control with/without distance control


#### WARNING

The system does not react to traffic driving ahead of you, but instead maintains the stored speed. There is risk of accidents or risk of property damage. Adjust the desired speed to the traffic conditions and brake as needed. ◀

Changing to Active Cruise Control without distance control:

 Press and hold this button, or

 Press and hold this button.


 The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up.

To switch back to cruise control, press one of the buttons briefly.

After switching, a Check Control message is displayed.

### Displays in the instrument cluster

#### Desired speed

 In addition to the indicator lamp, the desired speed is displayed in the central information display.

- ▷ The indicator lights up green: the system is active.
- ▷ The indicator lights up orange: the system has been interrupted.
- ▷ No display: system is switched off.

If no speed is indicated, it is possible that the conditions necessary for operation are not currently fulfilled.

### Distance to vehicle ahead of you


Selected distance from the vehicle driving ahead is briefly displayed in the left hand portion of the info display.

#### Distance display


 Distance 1


 Distance 2

 Distance 3


 Distance 4  
This value is set automatically after the system is switched on.


### Indicator/warning lights

 Symbol lights up orange:  
A vehicle has been detected ahead of you.

 Symbol flashes orange:  
The conditions are not adequate for the system to work.

The system was deactivated but applies the brakes until you actively resume control by pressing on the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.

 Symbol flashes red and a signal sounds:  
You are requested to intervene by braking or make an evasive maneuver.

 The system has been interrupted or distance control is temporarily suppressed

because the accelerator pedal is being pressed; a vehicle was not detected.



Distance control is temporarily suppressed because the accelerator pedal is being pressed; a vehicle was detected.

### Displays in the Head-up Display

The information from Active Cruise Control can also be displayed in the Head-up Display.

Adjusting the Head-up Display, refer to page 89.

### System limits

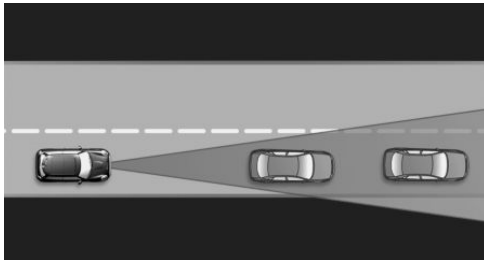
#### Speed range

The system is best used on well-constructed roads. The system is functional at speeds beginning at approx. 20 mph/30 km/h.

The max. speed that can be set is 85 mph/140 km/h.

Comply with the legal speed limit and safety distance in every situation when using the system.

#### Detection range



The detection capacity of the system and the automatic braking capacity are limited.

Two-wheeled vehicles for instance might not be detected.



### WARNING

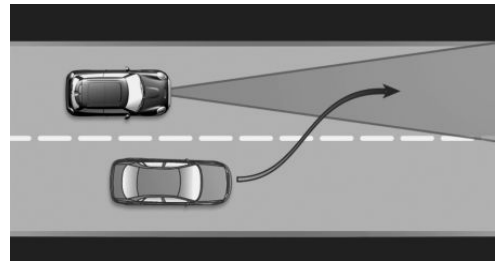
The system does not relieve from the personal responsibility to correctly assess the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is risk of an accident. Adjust the driving style to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively interfere in the respective situations. ◀

### Deceleration

The system also does not decelerate in the following situations:

- ▷ In case of pedestrians, cyclists or similar slow road users.
- ▷ For red traffic lights.
- ▷ For cross traffic.
- ▷ For oncoming traffic.
- ▷ Unlit vehicles or vehicles with nonworking lighting at night.

### Swerving vehicles



A vehicle driving in front of you is not detected until it is completely within the same lane as your vehicle.

If a vehicle driving ahead of you suddenly swerves into your lane, the system may not be able to automatically restore the selected distance. This also applies to major speed differences to vehicles driving ahead of you, e.g., when rapidly approaching a truck. When a vehicle driving ahead of you is reliably detected, the system requests that the driver intervene

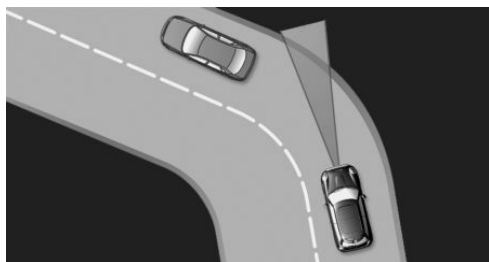
by braking and carrying out evasive maneuvers, if needed.



#### WARNING

The system does not relieve from the personal responsibility to correctly assess the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is risk of an accident. Adjust the driving style to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively interfere in the respective situations. ◀

### Cornering



If the desired speed is too high for a curve, the speed is reduced slightly, although curves cannot be anticipated in advance. Therefore, drive into a curve at an appropriate speed.

In tight curves the system offers only restricted detection where a vehicle ahead of you might be detected late or not at all.



When you approach a curve the system may briefly report vehicles in the next lane due to the bend of the curve. If the system decelerates you may compensate it by briefly accelerating.

After releasing the gas pedal the system is reactivated and controls speed independently.

### Weather

In the event of unfavorable weather and light conditions, e. g. if there is rain, snowfall, slush, fog or glare, this may result in poorer recognition of vehicles as well as short-term interruptions for vehicles that are already detected. Drive attentively, and react to the current traffic situation. If necessary, intervene actively, e.g. by braking, steering or evading.

### Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed if the system fails or was automatically deactivated.

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- ▷ When an object was not correctly detected.
- ▷ In heavy fog, rain, sprayed water or snowfall.
- ▷ In tight curves.
- ▷ If the field of view of the camera or the front windshield are dirty or covered.
- ▷ When driving toward bright lights.
- ▷ Up to 20 seconds after the start of the engine, via the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.

## CRUISE CONTROL

### The concept

The system is functional at speeds beginning at approx. 20 mph/30 km/h.

It maintains the speed that was set using the control elements on the steering wheel.

The system brakes on downhill gradients if engine braking is insufficient.

## Information

### WARNING

The use of the system can lead to an increased risk of accidents in the following situations:

- ▷ On winding roads.
- ▷ In heavy traffic.
- ▷ On slippery roads, in fog, snow or rain, or on a loose road surface.






There is risk of accidents or risk of property damage. Only use the system if driving at constant speed is possible. ◀

## General information

Depending on the driving program, refer to page 117, set, the characteristics of the cruise control in particular areas can change.


## Overview

### Buttons on the steering wheel

Press button	Function
	Cruise control on/off
	Store speed
	Pausing cruise control Continue cruise control with the last setting
	Increasing, maintaining or storing the speed
	Reducing, maintaining or storing the speed

## Controls

### Switching on

 Press button on the steering wheel.



The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up.



The current speed is adopted as the desired speed and is displayed with the symbol in the instrument cluster.

Cruise control is active and maintains the set speed.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control will be switched on if needed.

### Switch off



#### WARNING

The system does not relieve from the personal responsibility to correctly assess the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is risk of an accident. Adjust the driving style to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively interfere in the respective situations. ◀



Press button on the steering wheel.

The displays go out. The stored desired speed is deleted.

### Interrupting



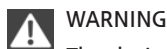
When active, press the button on the steering wheel.

The system is automatically interrupted in the following situations:

- ▷ When the brakes are applied.
- ▷ If the clutch pedal is depressed for a few seconds or released while a gear is not engaged.
- ▷ If the gear engaged is too high for the current speed.
- ▷ If selector lever position N is set.
- ▷ If DTC Dynamic Traction Control is activated or DSC is deactivated.
- ▷ When DSC is actively controlling stability.

## Maintaining, storing, and changing the speed

### Information



#### WARNING

The desired speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is risk of an accident. Adjust the desired speed to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively interfere in the respective situations. ◀

### Maintaining/storing the speed



Press button.

Or

⊕ or ⊖ button: press while the system is interrupted.

When the system is switched on, the current speed is maintained and stored as the desired speed.

This is displayed in the instrument cluster.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control will be switched on if needed.

### Changing the speed

⊕ or ⊖ button: press repeatedly until the desired speed is set.

If active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle reaches the stored speed when the road is clear.

▷ ⊕ or ⊖ button: each time it is pressed to the point of resistance, the desired speed increases or decreases by approx. 1 mph/1 km/h.

▷ ⊕ or ⊖ button: each time it is pressed past the point of resistance, the desired speed increases or decreases by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h.

The maximum speed that can be set depends on the vehicle.

▷ ⊕ or ⊖ button: pressing it to the resistance point and holding it there accelerates

or decelerates the vehicle without requiring pressure on the accelerator pedal. After the button is released, the vehicle maintains its final speed. Pressing the switch beyond the resistance point causes the vehicle to accelerate more rapidly.

### Continue cruise control



Press button on the steering wheel.

The stored speed is reached and maintained.

### Displays in the instrument cluster

#### Indicator lamp



Depending on how the vehicle is equipped, the indicator lamp in the instrument cluster indicates whether the system is switched on.

#### Desired speed



The desired speed is displayed together with the symbol.

- ▷ The indicator lights up green: the system is active.
- ▷ The indicator lights up orange: the system has been interrupted.
- ▷ No display: system is switched off.

If no speed is indicated, it is possible that the conditions necessary for operation are not currently fulfilled.

## PDC PARK DISTANCE CONTROL

### The concept

PDC supports you when parking. Slowly approaching an object behind or, with the appropriate equipment, also in front of your vehicle is signaled by:

- ▷ Signal tones.
- ▷ Visual display.

### General information

Ultrasound sensors in the bumpers measure the distances from objects.

The maneuvering range, depending on obstacles and environmental conditions, is approx. 6 ft/2 m.

An acoustic warning is first given with the following circumstances:

- ▷ By the front middle sensors and the two corner sensors at approx. 24 in/60 cm.
- ▷ By the rear middle sensors at approx. 5 ft/1.50 m.
- ▷ When a collision is imminent

### Information

Loud noises from outside and inside the vehicle may prevent you from hearing the PDC's signal tone.

#### WARNING

The system does not relieve from the personal responsibility to correctly assess the traffic situation. There is risk of an accident. Adjust the driving style to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic and vehicle surroundings closely and actively interfere in the respective situations. ◀

#### WARNING

Due to high speeds when PDC is activated, the warning can be delayed due to physical circumstances. There is risk of injuries or risk of property damage. Avoid approaching an object too fast. Avoid driving off fast while PDC is not yet active. ◀

## Overview

### Button in the vehicle



### Ultrasound sensors



PDC sensors on the vehicle.

### Functional requirements

To ensure full functionality:

- ▷ Do not cover sensors, e.g., with stickers, bicycle racks.
- ▷ Keep the sensors clean and free of ice.

To clean: when using high-pressure washers, do not spray the sensors for long periods and maintain a distance of at least 12 in/30 cm.


### Switching on/off

#### Switching on automatically

PDC switches on automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ If selector lever position R is engaged when the engine is running.  
The rearview camera also switches on.
- ▷ If, with the appropriate equipment, obstacles are detected behind or in front of the vehicle by PDC and the speed is slower than approx. 2.5 mph/4 km/h.

You may turn off automatic activation:

1.  "Settings"
2. "Parking"
3. Select setting.  
Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

### Automatic deactivation during forward travel

The system switches off when a certain driving distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on if needed.

### Switching on/off manually



Press button.

- ▷ On: the LED lights up.
- ▷ Off: the LED goes out.

The rearview camera image is displayed when the reverse gear is engaged by pressing the button.

## Display

### Signal tones

When approaching an object, an intermittent sound indicates the position of the object. E. g. if an object is detected to the left rear of the vehicle, a signal tone sounds from the left rear speaker.

The shorter the distance to the object, the shorter the intervals.




If the distance to a detected object is less than approx. 10 in/25 cm, a continuous tone is sounded.

If objects are located both in front of and to the rear of the vehicle, an alternating continuous signal is sounded.

The signal tone is switched off, when selector lever position P is engaged on vehicles with Steptronic transmission.

## Volume

The ratio of the PDC signal tone volume to the entertainment volume can be adjusted.

1.  "Multimedia",  "Radio" or  "Settings"
2. "Tone"
3. "Volume settings"
4. "PDC"
5. To adjust: turn the controller.
6. To store: press the controller.

Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

### Visual warning

The approach of the vehicle to an object can be shown on the Control Display. Objects that are farther away are already displayed on the Control Display before a signal sounds.

A display appears as soon as Park Distance Control (PDC) is activated.

The range of the sensors is represented in colors: red, green and yellow.

When the image of the rearview camera is displayed, the switch can be made to PDC:

 "Rear view camera"

## System limits

### Limits of ultrasonic measurement

Ultrasonic measuring might not function under the following circumstances:

- ▷ For small children and animals.
- ▷ For persons with certain clothing, e.g. coats.
- ▷ With external interference of the ultrasound, e.g. from passing vehicles or loud machines.
- ▷ When sensors are dirty, iced over, damaged or out of position.



- ▶ Under certain weather conditions such as high relative humidity, rain, snowfall, extreme heat or strong wind.
- ▶ With tow bars and trailer couplings of other vehicles.
- ▶ With thin or wedge-shaped objects.
- ▶ With moving objects.
- ▶ With elevated, protruding objects such as ledges or cargo.
- ▶ With objects with corners and sharp edges.
- ▶ With objects with a fine surface structure such as fences.
- ▶ For objects with porous surfaces.

Low objects already displayed, e.g., curbs, can move into the blind area of the sensors before or after a continuous tone sounds.

### False warnings

PDC may issue a warning under the following conditions even though there is no obstacle within the detection range:

- ▶ In heavy rain.
- ▶ When sensors are very dirty or covered with ice.
- ▶ When sensors are covered in snow.
- ▶ On rough road surfaces.
- ▶ On uneven surfaces, such as speed bumps.
- ▶ In large buildings with right angles and smooth walls, e.g., in underground garages.
- ▶ In automatic car washes.
- ▶ Through heavy pollution.
- ▶ Due to other ultrasound sources, e.g., sweeping machines, high pressure steam cleaners or neon lights.

The malfunction is signaled by a continuous tone alternating between the front and rear speakers. As soon as the malfunction due to other ultrasound sources is no longer present, the system is again fully functional.

### Malfunction

A Check Control message, refer to page 76, is displayed in the instrument cluster.



Red symbol is displayed, and the range of the sensors is dimmed on the Control Display.

PDC has failed. Have the system checked.

## REARVIEW CAMERA

### The concept

The rearview camera provides assistance in parking and maneuvering backwards. The area behind the vehicle is shown on the Control Display.

### Information



#### WARNING

The system does not relieve from the personal responsibility to correctly assess the traffic situation. There is risk of an accident. Adjust the driving style to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic and vehicle surroundings closely and actively interfere in the respective situations. ◀

### Overview

#### Button in the vehicle



Rearview camera

## Camera



The camera lens is located in the handle of the tailgate.

The image quality may be impaired by dirt. Clean the camera lens, refer to page 223.

### Switching on/off

#### Switching on automatically

With the engine running, engage lever in position P R.

#### Automatic deactivation during forward travel

The system switches off when a certain driving distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on if needed.

#### Switching on/off manually



Press button.

- ▷ On: the LED lights up.
- ▷ Off: the LED goes out.

The PDC is shown on the Control Display.

The rearview camera image is displayed when the reverse gear is engaged by pressing the button.

#### Switching the view via the onboard monitor

With PDC activated:

 "Rear view camera"

The rearview camera image is displayed.



### Display on the Control Display

#### Functional requirement

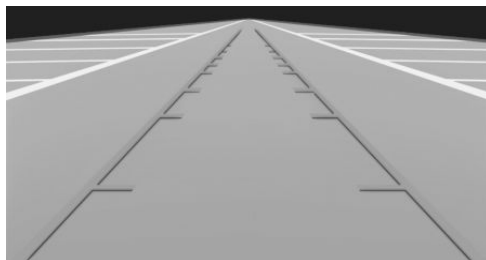
- ▷ The rearview camera is switched on.
- ▷ The tailgate is fully closed.

#### Activating the assistance functions

More than one assistance function can be active at the same time.

- ▷ Parking aid lines
  -  "Parking aid lines"  
Lanes and turning radius are indicated.
- ▷ Obstacle marking
  -  "Obstacle marking"  
Spatially-shaped markings are displayed.

#### Pathway lines

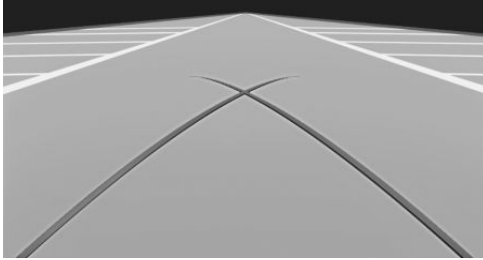


Pathway lines can be superimposed on the image of the rearview camera.

Pathway lines help you to estimate the space required when parking and maneuvering on level roads.

Pathway lines depend on the current steering angle and are continuously adjusted to the steering wheel movements.

## Turning circle lines

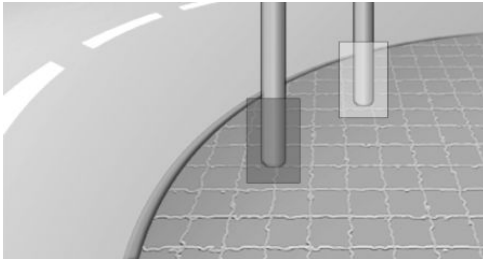


Turning circle lines can be superimposed on the image of the rearview camera.

Turning circle lines show the course of the smallest possible turning radius on a level road.

Only one turning radius line is displayed after the steering wheel is turned past a certain angle.

## Obstacle marking

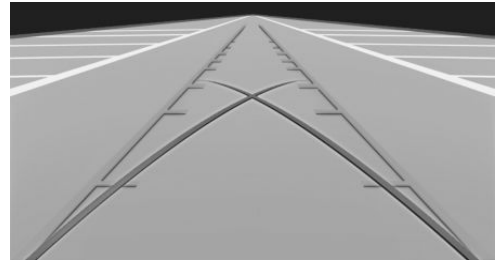


Obstacle markings can be faded into the image of the rearview camera.

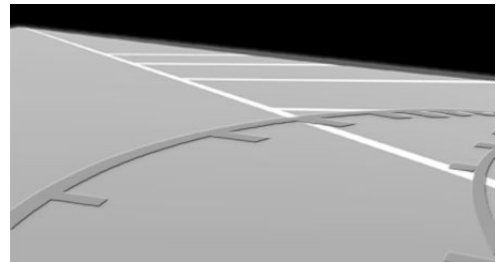
Their colored margins of the obstacle markings match the markings of the PDC.

## Parking using pathway and turning radius lines

1. Position the vehicle so that the turning radius lines lead to within the limits of the parking space.



2. Turn the steering wheel to the point where the pathway line covers the corresponding turning radius line.



## Display settings

### Brightness

With the rearview camera switched on:

1. ☀ Select the symbol.
2. Turn the controller until the desired setting is reached and press the controller.

### Contrast

With the rearview camera switched on:

1. 🌑 Select the symbol.
2. Turn the controller until the desired setting is reached and press the controller.

## System limits

### Detection of objects

Very low obstacles or high, protruding objects such as ledges may not be recognized by the system.

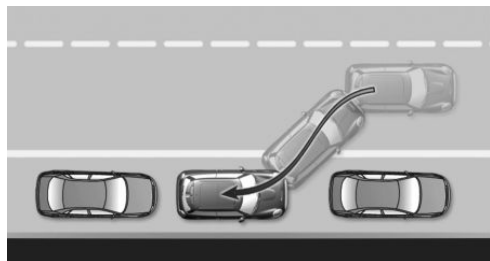
Assistance functions also take into account data of the PDC.

Follow instructions in the PDC chapter, refer to page 126.

The objects displayed on the Control Display under certain circumstances are closer than they appear. Therefore, do not estimate the distance from the objects on the display.

## PARKING ASSISTANT

### The concept



This system assists the driver in parking parallel to the road.

Ultrasound sensors measure parking spaces on both sides of the vehicle.

The parking assistant calculates the best possible parking line and takes control of steering during the parking procedure.

When parking, also take note of the visual and acoustic information issued by the PDC, the parking assistant and, where applicable, the rearview camera, and react accordingly.

A component of the parking assistant is the PDC Park Distance Control, refer to page 126.

## Information

### ⚠ WARNING

The system does not relieve from the personal responsibility to correctly assess the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is risk of an accident. Adjust the driving style to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively interfere in the respective situations. ◀

### ⚠ CAUTION

The parking assistant can steer the vehicle over or onto curbs. There is risk of property damage. Watch traffic closely and actively interfere in the respective situations. ◀

An engine that has been switched off by the Auto Start Stop function is restarted automatically when the parking assistant is activated.

## Overview

### Button in the vehicle



### ⚠ Parking assistant

## Ultrasound sensors



The ultrasound sensors for measuring parking spaces are located on the wheel housing.

To ensure full functionality:

- ▷ Keep the sensors clean and free of ice.
- ▷ When using high-pressure washers, do not spray the sensors for long periods and maintain a distance of at least 12 in/30 cm.
- ▷ Do not put stickers over sensors.

## Requirements

### For measuring parking spaces

- ▷ Maximum speed while driving forward approx. 22 mph/35 km/h.
- ▷ Maximum distance to row of parked vehicles: 5 ft/1.5 m.

### Suitable parking space

- ▷ Gaps behind an object that has a min. length of 5 ft/1.5 m.
- ▷ Gap between two objects with a minimum length of approx. 5 ft/1.5 m.
- ▷ Min. length of gap between two objects: your vehicle's length plus approx. 3.3 ft/1.0 m.
- ▷ Minimum depth: approx. 5 ft/1.5 m.

### Regarding the parking procedure

- ▷ Doors and tailgate closed.
- ▷ Parking brake released.

- ▷ When parking in parking spaces on the driver's side, the corresponding turn signal must be set.

## Switching on/off

### Switching on with the button



Press button.

The LED lights up.

The current status of the parking space search is indicated on the Control Display.

Parking assistant is activated automatically.

### Switching on with reverse gear

Shift into reverse.

The current status of the parking space search is indicated on the Control Display.

To activate: "Parking Assistant"

### Switch off

The system can be deactivated as follows:

- ▷ Press button.
- ▷ Switch off the ignition.


## Indicator on the Control Display

### System activated/deactivated

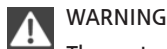
Symbol	Meaning
	Gray: the system is not available. White: the system is available but not activated.
	The system is activated.

## System status



- ▷ Colored symbols, see arrows, on the side of the vehicle illustrated. Parking assistant is activated and search for parking space active.
- ▷ Control Display shows suitable parking spaces at the edge of the road next to the vehicle symbol. When the parking assistant is active, suitable parking spaces are highlighted.
- ▷  The parking procedure is active. Steering control has been taken over by system.
- ▷ Parking space search is always active whenever the vehicle is moving forward slow and straight, even if the system is deactivated. When the system is deactivated, the displays on the Control Display are shown in gray.

## Parking using the parking assistant



**WARNING**  
The system does not relieve from the personal responsibility to correctly assess the traffic situation. There is risk of an accident. Adjust the driving style to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic and vehicle surroundings closely and actively interfere in the respective situations. ◀

1. Switch on the parking assistant and activate it if needed.  
The status of the parking space search is indicated on the display.

2. Follow the instructions on the display.  
The best possible parking position will come after gear change on the stationary vehicle - wait for the automatic steering wheel move.  
The end of the parking procedure is indicated on the display.
3. Adjust the parking position yourself if needed.

## Interrupting manually

The parking assistant can be interrupted at any time:

- ▷  "Parking Assistant"

- ▷  Press button.

## Interrupting automatically

The system is interrupted automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ If the driver grasps the steering wheel or if he takes over steering.
- ▷ If a gear is selected that does not match the instruction on the display.
- ▷ If the vehicle speed exceeds approx. 6 mph/10 km/h.
- ▷ Possible on snow-covered or slippery road surfaces.
- ▷ If a maximum number of parking attempts or the time taken for parking is exceeded.
- ▷ If the Park Distance Control PDC displays clearances that are too small.
- ▷ When switching into other functions of the radio.

A Check Control message is displayed.

## Resume

An interrupted parking procedure can be continued if needed.

To do this, follow the instructions on the display.

## System limits

### No parking assistance

The parking assistant does not offer assistance in the following situations:

- ▷ In tight curves.

### Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- ▷ On bumpy road surfaces such as gravel roads.
- ▷ On slippery ground.
- ▷ With accumulations of leaves/snow in the parking space.
- ▷ With a mounted emergency wheel.

### Limits of ultrasonic measurement

Ultrasonic measuring might not function under the following circumstances:

- ▷ For small children and animals.
- ▷ For persons with certain clothing, e.g. coats.
- ▷ With external interference of the ultrasound, e.g. from passing vehicles or loud machines.
- ▷ When sensors are dirty, iced over, damaged or out of position.
- ▷ Under certain weather conditions such as high relative humidity, rain, snowfall, extreme heat or strong wind.
- ▷ With tow bars and trailer couplings of other vehicles.
- ▷ With thin or wedge-shaped objects.
- ▷ With moving objects.
- ▷ With elevated, protruding objects such as ledges or cargo.
- ▷ With objects with corners and sharp edges.
- ▷ With objects with a fine surface structure such as fences.
- ▷ For objects with porous surfaces.

Low objects already displayed, e.g., curbs, can move into the blind area of the sensors before or after a continuous tone sounds.

The parking assistant may identify parking spaces that are not suitable for parking.

### Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed.

The parking assistant failed. Have the system checked.

# CLIMATE CONTROL

## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not

necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## AIR CONDITIONER



- |   |                        |   |                       |
|---|------------------------|---|-----------------------|
| 1 | Vent settings          | 6 | Recirculated-air mode |
| 2 | Air flow               | 7 | Rear window defroster |
| 3 | Temperature            | 8 | Windshield defroster  |
| 4 | Seat heating, right 51 | 9 | Seat heating, left 51 |
| 5 | Cooling function       |   |                       |



## Climate control functions in detail

### Switching the system on/off

#### Switching on

Set any air volume.

#### Switch off



Turn wheel for air quantity to the left until the control switches off.

### Temperature



Turn the ring to set the desired temperature.

### Cooling function

The car's interior can only be cooled with the engine running.



Press button.

The air will be cooled and dehumidified and, depending on the temperature setting, warmed again.

Depending on the weather, the windshield may fog up briefly when the engine is started.

The air conditioner produces condensation water, refer to page 160, that will exit from below the car.

### Recirculated-air mode

You may respond to unpleasant odors or pollutants in the immediate environment by temporarily suspending the supply of outside air. The system then recirculates the air currently within the vehicle.



Press button repeatedly to select an operating mode:

- ▷ LED off: outside air flows in continuously.
- ▷ LED on, recirculated-air mode: the supply of outside air into the vehicle is permanently blocked.

To prevent window condensation, recirculated air mode switches off automatically after a certain amount of time, depending on the external temperature.

With constant recirculated-air mode, the air quality in the car's interior deteriorates and the fogging of the windows increases.

If the windows fog over, switch off recirculated-air mode and increase the air flow, if needed.

### Air flow, manual



Turn the ring to set the desired air volume.





The higher the rate, the more effective the heating or cooling will be.

The air flow from the air conditioner may be reduced automatically to save battery power.

### Manual air distribution



Turn the wheel to select the desired program or the desired intermediate setting.

- ▷  Windows.
- ▷  Upper body region.
- ▷  Footwell.
- ▷  Windows, upper body region, and footwell.

### Defrosts windows and removes condensation

Direct the air distribution toward windows, increase the air flow and temperature, and, if needed, use the cooling function.

### Windshield defroster



Press button.

The front window defroster switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

### Rear window defroster



Press button.

The rear window defroster switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

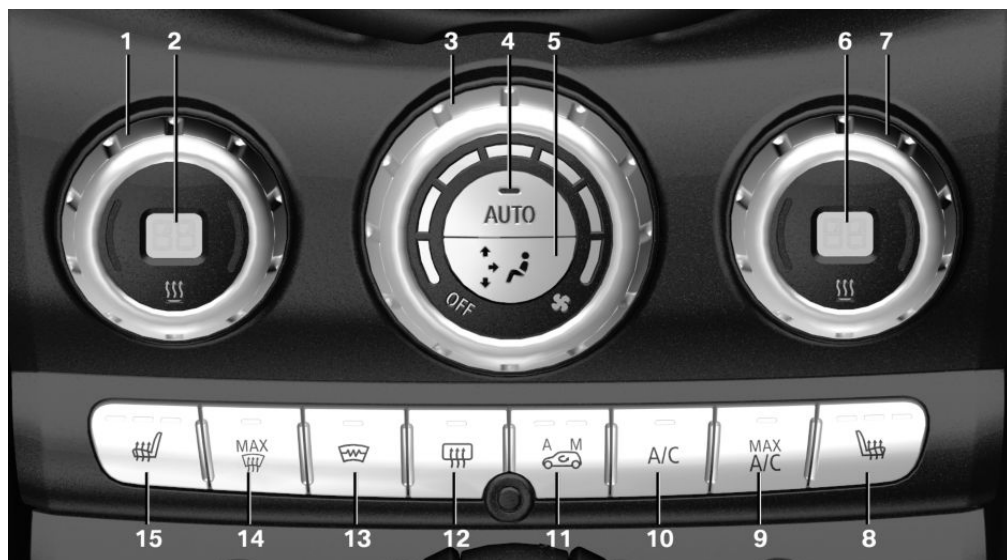
When Green mode, refer to page 165, is activated, the heater output is reduced.

### Microfilter

In external and recirculated air mode the microfilter filters dust and pollen from the air.

This filter should be replaced during scheduled maintenance, refer to page 200, of your vehicle.

## AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL



- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Temperature, left</li> <li>2 Display</li> <li>3 Air flow, AUTO intensity</li> <li>4 AUTO program</li> <li>5 Air distribution, manual</li> <li>6 Display</li> <li>7 Temperature, right</li> <li>8 Seat heating, right 51</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>9 Maximum cooling</li> <li>10 Cooling function</li> <li>11 Automatic recirculated-air control/recirculated-air mode</li> <li>12 Rear window defroster</li> <li>13 Windshield defroster</li> <li>14 Defrosts windows and removes condensation</li> </ul> |
|---|--|

15 Seat heating, left 51

## Climate control functions in detail

### Switching the system on/off

#### Switching on

Set any air volume.

#### Switch off



Turn wheel for air quantity to the left until the control switches off.

### Temperature



Turn the ring to set the desired temperature.

The automatic climate control reaches this temperature as quickly as possible, if needed by increasing the cooling or heating output, and then keeps it constant.

Do not rapidly switch between different temperature settings. The automatic climate control will not have sufficient time to adjust the set temperature.

### Cooling function

The car's interior can only be cooled with the engine running.



Press button.

The air will be cooled and dehumidified and, depending on the temperature setting, warmed again.

Depending on the weather, the windshield may fog up briefly when the engine is started.

The cooling function is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

When using the automatic climate control, condensation water, refer to page 160, develops that exits underneath the vehicle.

### Maximum cooling



Press button.

The system is set to the lowest temperature, optimum air flow and air circulation mode.

Air flows out of the vents to the upper body region. The vents need to be open for this.

The function is available with external temperatures beyond approx. 32 °F/0 °C and with the engine running.

Adjust air flow with the program active.

### AUTO program



Press button.

Air flow, air distribution and temperature are controlled automatically.

Depending on the selected temperature, AUTO intensity and outside influences, the air is directed to the windshield, side windows, upper body, and into the footwell.

The cooling function, refer to page 139, and the automatic recirculation control, refer to page 140, are automatically also switched on in the AUTO program.

To switch off the program: press the button again or manually adjust the air distribution.

### Intensity of the AUTO program

With the AUTO program activated, the automatic intensity control can be changed.




Turn the ring to set the desired intensity.

The selected intensity is displayed on the automatic climate control.

### Automatic recirculated-air control/ recirculated-air mode

You may respond to unpleasant odors or pollutants in the immediate environment by temporarily suspending the supply of outside air. The system then recirculates the air currently within the vehicle.

 Press button repeatedly to select an operating mode:

- ▷ LEDs off: outside air flows in continuously.
- ▷ Left LED on, automatic recirculated-air control: a sensor detects pollutants in the outside air and shuts off automatically.
- ▷ Right LED on, recirculated-air mode: the supply of outside air into the vehicle is permanently blocked.

To prevent window condensation, recirculated air mode switches off automatically after a certain amount of time, depending on the external temperature.

With constant recirculated-air mode, the air quality in the car's interior deteriorates and the fogging of the windows increases.

If windows are fogged over, switch off the recirculating mode and press the AUTO button. Make sure that air can flow to the windshield.

### Air flow, manual

To manually adjust air flow turn off AUTO program first.



Turn the ring to set the desired air volume.

Automatic climate control displays the selected amount of air flow.

The air flow of the automatic climate control may be reduced automatically to save battery power.

### Manual air distribution



Press button repeatedly to select a program:

- ▷ Upper body region.
- ▷ Upper body region and footwell.
- ▷ Footwell.
- ▷ Windows and footwell.
- ▷ Windows, upper body region, and footwell.
- ▷ Windows and upper body region.
- ▷ Windows.

### Defrosts windows and removes condensation



Press button.

Ice and condensation are quickly removed from the windshield and the front side windows.

Adjust air flow with the program active.

If the windows fog over, also switch on the cooling function or press the AUTO button.

### Windshield defroster



Press button.

The front window defroster switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

### Rear window defroster



Press button.

The rear window defroster switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

When Green mode, refer to page 165, is activated, the heater output is reduced.

### Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter

In external and recirculated air mode the microfilter/activated charcoal filter filters dust, pollen, and gaseous pollutants out of the air.

This filter should be replaced during scheduled maintenance, refer to page 200, of your vehicle.

## VENTILATION

### Setting

The air flow directions can be individually adjusted:

- ▷ Direct ventilation:  
The air flow is directly pointed onto the person. The air flow heats or cools noticeably, depending on the adjusted temperature.
- ▷ Indirect ventilation:  
If the vents are fully or partly closed, the air is indirectly routed into the car's interior

### Front ventilation



- ▷ Turn knob for continuous opening and closing of the vents.
- ▷ Swivel the vents to alter the direction of the vent flow, arrow.

## PARKED-CAR VENTILATION

### The concept


The parked-car ventilation ventilates the vehicle interior and lowers its temperature, if needed.


The system can be switched on and off at any external temperature, either directly or by using two preset reel-on times. It remains switched on for 30 minutes.

Open the vents to allow air to flow out.

### Switching on/off directly


On the Control Display:

1.  "Settings"
2. "Climate"
3. "Activate comf. ventilation"

 The symbol on the automatic climate control flashes if the system is switched on.


### Preselecting the reel-on time


On the Control Display:


1.  "Settings"
2. "Climate"
3. "Timer 1:" or "Timer 2:"
4. Set the desired time.

### Activating the reel-on time

On the Control Display:

1.  "Settings"
2. "Climate"
3. "Activate timer 1" or "Activate timer 2"

 The symbol on the automatic climate control lights up when the reel-on time is activated.

 The symbol on the automatic climate control flashes when the system has been switched on.

The system will only be switched on within the next 24 hours. After that, it needs to be reactivated.

# INTERIOR EQUIPMENT

## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## UNIVERSAL INTEGRATED REMOTE CONTROL

### The concept

The Universal Integrated Remote Control can operate up to 3 functions of remote-controlled systems such as garage door drives or lighting systems. The Universal Integrated Remote Control replaces up to 3 different hand-held transmitters. To operate the remote control, the buttons on the interior rearview mirror must be programmed with the desired functions. The hand-held transmitter for the particular system is required in order to program the remote control.

Before selling the vehicle, delete the stored functions for the sake of security.

### Information



#### WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when operating remote-controlled systems, e.g. the garage door, using the universal garage door opener. There is risk of injuries or risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the respective system is clear during program-

ming and operation. Also follow the safety instructions of the hand-held transmitter. ◀

### Compatibility



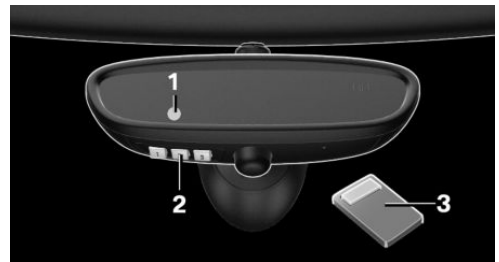
If this symbol is printed on the packaging or in the instructions of the system to be controlled, the system is generally compatible with the Universal Integrated Remote Control.

If you have any questions, please contact:

- ▷ A dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
- ▷ [www.homelink.com](http://www.homelink.com) on the Internet.

HomeLink is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

### Overview



- 1 LED
- 2 Programmable keys
- 3 Hand-held transmitters of the system

## Programming

### General information

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Initial setup:

Press and hold the left and right button on the interior rearview mirror simultaneously for approximately 20 seconds until the LED

on the interior rearview mirror flashes. This erases all programming of the buttons on the interior rearview mirror.

3. Hold the hand-held transmitter for the system to be controlled approx. 1 to 3 in/2.5 to 8 cm away from the buttons of the interior rearview mirror. The required distance depends on the manual transmitter.
4. Simultaneously press and hold the button of the desired function on the hand-held transmitter and the button to be programmed on the interior rearview mirror. The LED on the interior rearview mirror will begin flashing slowly.
5. Release both buttons as soon as the LED flashes more rapidly. The LED flashing faster indicates that the button on the interior rearview mirror has been programmed. If the LED does not flash faster after at least 60 seconds, change the distance between the interior rearview mirror and the hand-held transmitter and repeat the step. Several more attempts at different distances may be necessary. Wait at least 15 seconds between attempts.

Canada: if programming with the hand-held transmitter was interrupted, hold down the interior rearview mirror button and repeatedly press and release the hand-held transmitter button for 2 seconds.

6. To program other functions on other buttons, repeat steps 3 to 5.

The systems can be controlled using the interior rearview mirror buttons.

### Special feature of the alternating-code wireless system

If you are unable to operate the system after repeated programming, please check if the system to be controlled features an alternating-code system.

Read the system's operating manual, or press the programmed button on the interior rearview mirror longer. If the LED on the interior

rearview mirror starts flashing rapidly and then stays lit constantly for 2 seconds, the system features an alternating-code system. Flashing and continuous illumination of the LED will repeat for approximately 20 seconds.

For systems with an alternating-code system, the Universal Integrated Remote Control and the system also have to be synchronized.

Please read the operating manual to find out how to synchronize the system.

Synchronizing is easier with the aid of a second person.

To synchronize:

1. Park the vehicle within range of the remote-controlled system.
2. Program the relevant button on the interior rearview mirror as described.
3. Locate and press the synchronizing button on the system being programmed. You have approx. 30 seconds for the next step.
4. Hold down the programmed button on the interior rearview mirror for approximately 3 seconds and then release it. If necessary, repeat this step up to three times in order to finish synchronization. Once synchronization is complete, the programmed function will be carried out.

### Reprogramming individual buttons

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Press and hold the interior rearview mirror button to be programmed.
3. As soon as the interior rearview mirror LED starts flashing slowly, hold the hand-held transmitter for the system to be controlled approx. 1 to 3 in/2.5 to 8 cm away from the buttons of the interior rearview mirror. The required distance depends on the manual transmitter.



4. Likewise, press and hold the button of the desired function on the hand-held transmitter.
5. Release both buttons as soon as the interior rearview mirror LED flashes more rapidly. The LED flashing faster indicates that the button on the interior rearview mirror has been programmed. The system can then be controlled by the button on the interior rearview mirror.

If the LED does not flash faster after at least 60 seconds, change the distance and repeat the step. Several more attempts at different distances may be necessary. Wait at least 15 seconds between attempts.

Canada: if programming with the hand-held transmitter was interrupted, hold down the interior rearview mirror button and repeatedly press and release the hand-held transmitter button for 2 seconds.

## Controls



### WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when operating remote-controlled systems, e.g. the garage door, using the universal garage door opener. There is risk of injuries or risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the respective system is clear during programming and operation. Also follow the safety instructions of the hand-held transmitter. ◀

The system, such as the garage door, can be operated using the button on the interior rearview mirror while the engine is running or when the ignition is started. To do this, hold down the button within receiving range of the system until the function is activated. The interior rearview mirror LED stays lit while the wireless signal is being transmitted.

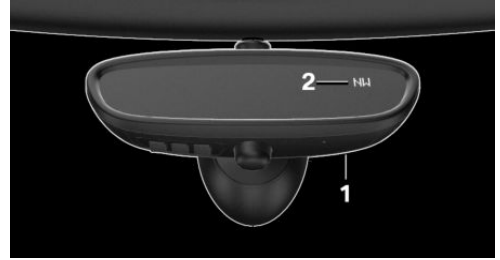
## Deleting stored functions

Press and hold the left and right button on the interior rearview mirror simultaneously for approximately 20 seconds until the LED flashes

rapidly. All stored functions are deleted. The functions cannot be deleted individually.

## DIGITAL COMPASS

### Overview



- 1 Control button
- 2 Mirror display

### Mirror display

The point of the compass is displayed in the mirror when driving straight.

### Operating concept

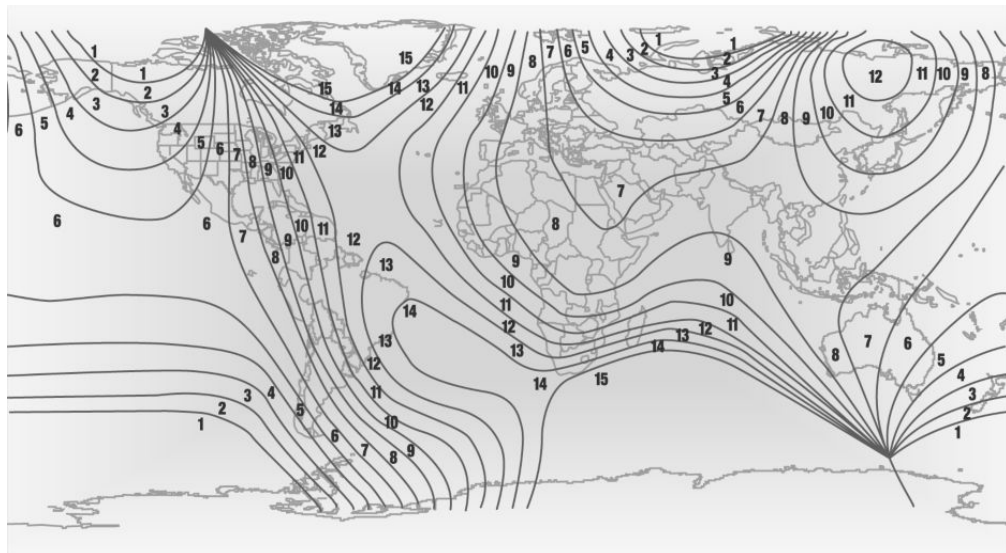
Various functions can be called up by pressing the control button with a pointed object, such as the tip of a ballpoint pen or similar object. The following setting options are displayed in succession, depending on how long the control button is pressed:

- ▷ Pressed briefly: turns display on/off.
- ▷ 3 to 6 seconds: compass zone setting.
- ▷ 6 to 9 seconds: compass calibration.
- ▷ 9 to 12 seconds: left/right-hand steering setting.
- ▷ 12 to 15 seconds: language setting.

### Setting the compass zones

Sets the particular compass zones on the vehicle so that the compass operates correctly; refer to World map with compass zones.

## World map with magnetic zones



### Procedure

1. Press and hold the control button for approx. 3 to 4 seconds. The number of the set compass zone appears in the mirror.
2. To change the zone setting, press the control button quickly and repeatedly until the number of the compass zone that corresponds with your location appears in the mirror.

The set zone is stored automatically. The compass is ready for use again after approximately 10 seconds.

### Calibrating the digital compass

The digital compass must be calibrated in the event of the following:

- ▷ The wrong compass point is displayed.
- ▷ The point of the compass displayed does not change despite changing the direction of travel.
- ▷ Not all points of the compass are displayed.

### Procedure

1. Make sure that there are no large metallic objects or overhead power lines near the vehicle and that there is sufficient room to drive around in a circle.
2. Set the currently applicable compass zone.
3. Press and hold the control button for approx. 6 to 7 seconds so that "C" appears on the display. Next, drive in a complete circle at least once at a speed of no more than 4 mph/7 km/h. If calibration is successful, the "C" is replaced by the points of the compass.

### Left/right-hand steering

The digital compass is already set for right or left-hand steering at the factory.

### Setting the language

Press and hold the control button for approx. 12 to 13 seconds. Briefly press the control button again to switch between English "E" and German "O".

Settings are stored automatically after approximately 10 seconds.

## SUN VISOR

### Glare shield

Fold the sun visor down or up.

### Vanity mirror

A vanity mirror is located in the sun visor behind a cover. When the cover is opened, the mirror lighting switches on.

## ASHTRAY/CIGARETTE LIGHTER

### Overview



The ashtray is located in one of the frontal cup holders, the cigarette lighter above it in the center console.

### Ashtray

In order to empty the ashtray, remove the ashtray from the cupholder.

### Lighter



#### WARNING

Contact with hot heating elements or the hot socket of the cigarette lighter can cause burns. Flammable materials can ignite if the cigarette lighter falls down or is held against

the respective objects. There is risk of fire and injuries. Hold the cigarette lighter on its handle. Make sure that children do not use the cigarette lighter and do not burn themselves, e.g. by carrying the remote control along when exiting the vehicle. ◀



#### CAUTION

If metal objects fall into the socket, they can cause a short circuit. There is risk of property damage. Replace the cigarette lighter or socket cover again after using the socket. ◀



Push in the lighter.

The lighter can be removed as soon as it pops back out.

## CONNECTING ELECTRICAL DEVICES

### Information



#### CAUTION

Battery chargers for the vehicle battery can work with high voltages and currents, which means that the 12V on-board network can be overloaded or damaged. There is risk of property damage. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the starting aid terminals in the engine compartment. ◀



#### CAUTION

If metal objects fall into the socket, they can cause a short circuit. There is risk of property damage. Replace the cigarette lighter or socket cover again after using the socket. ◀



#### WARNING

Devices and cables in the unfolding area of the airbags, e.g. portable navigation devices, etc., can hinder the unfolding of the airbag or be thrown around in the car's interior when unfolding. There is risk of injuries. make sure that

devices and cables are not in the airbag's area of unfolding. ◀

## Sockets

Sockets can be used for the running electrical devices with the engine running or with the ignition switched on. The total load of all sockets must not exceed 140 watts at 12 volts.

Do not damage the socket by using non-compatible connectors.

### In the center console



Remove the cover or cigarette lighter.

### In the trunk



The socket is located on the right side in the trunk.

## USB INTERFACE

### The concept

Connection for USB devices with music files and for importing data, such as for Personal Profile settings.

### Information

Observe the following when connecting:

- ▶ Do not use force when plugging the connector into the USB interface.
- ▶ Do not connect devices such as fans or lights to the USB interface.
- ▶ Do not connect any USB hard drives or USB hubs.
- ▶ Do not use the USB interface for recharging external devices.

### Overview



The USB interface is located in the front of the center console.

## CARGO AREA

### Cargo cover

### General information

When the tailgate is opened, the cargo cover is raised.

## Information

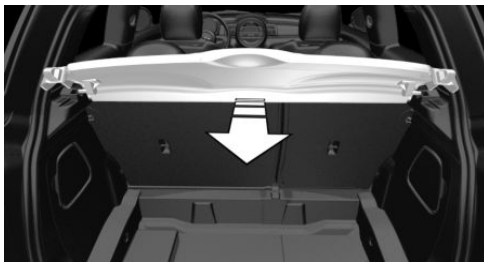
### WARNING

Loose objects in the car's interior can be thrown into the car's interior while driving, e.g. in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is risk of injuries. Secure loose objects in the car's interior. ◀

## Removing

For storing bulky objects the cargo cover can be removed.

1. Detach the left and right retaining straps at the tailgate.
2. Pull the cargo cover out of the brackets on the left and right.



## Installing

1. Slide the cargo cover forward horizontally into the two side brackets until it audibly engages.
2. Attach the left and right retaining straps at the tailgate.

## Enlarging the trunk

### General information

The trunk can be enlarged by folding down the rear seat backrest.

The rear backrest is divided 60–40. The backrest of the left seat is connected to the backrest center section.

## Information

### WARNING

Danger of jamming with folding down the backrests. There is risk of injuries or risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the rear backrest is clear prior to folding down. ◀

### WARNING

The stability of the child restraint system is limited or compromised with incorrect seat adjustment or improper installation of the child seat. There is risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest. If possible, adjust the backrest tilt for all affected backrests and correctly adjust the seats. Make sure that seats and backrests are securely engaged. If possible, adjust the height of the head restraints or remove them. ◀

### WARNING

With a rear backrest that is not locked, the protective function of the middle safety belt is not guaranteed. There is risk of injuries or danger to life. If you are using the middle safety belt, lock the wider rear backrest. ◀

### WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when moving the head restraint. There is risk of injuries. Make sure that the area of movement is clear when moving the head restraint. ◀

## Folding down side backrests

The rear seat backrests can be folded down from the front or from the trunk.

Before the backrest is folded down, hook the corresponding safety belt into the safety belt on the side.



Pull the release upward and fold the backrest toward the front.

### Folding back the backrest

#### WARNING

With an unlocked backrest, an unsecured load can be thrown into the car's interior, e.g. in case of an accident, braking or evasive maneuver. There is risk of injuries. Make sure that the backrest engages into the locking after folding it back. ◀

Fold up the backrest and press it into the latch. Make sure that the safety belt is not pinched.

### Adjusting the backrest tilt

#### WARNING

The stability of the child restraint system is limited or compromised with incorrect seat adjustment or improper installation of the child seat. There is risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest. If possible, adjust the backrest tilt for all affected backrests and correctly adjust the seats. Make sure that seats and backrests are securely engaged. If possible, adjust the height of the head restraints or remove them. ◀

To transport bulky items, the trunk can be expanded by setting the backrests at a steeper angle.

1. Released the back rest, and tilt it forward.

2. Fold the frame up until it engages.



3. Fold back and latch the backrest.

# STORAGE COMPARTMENTS

## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## INFORMATION

### WARNING

Loose objects in the car's interior can be thrown into the car's interior while driving, e.g. in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is risk of injuries. Secure loose objects in the car's interior. ◀

### CAUTION

Anti-slip pads such as anti-slip mats can damage the dashboard. There is risk of property damage. Do not use anti-slip pads. ◀

## OVERVIEW

The following storage compartments are available in the vehicle interior:

- ▷ Storage compartment in front of the cupholders.
- ▷ Storage tray in the center console.
- ▷ Glove compartment on the front passenger side.
- ▷ Storage compartment in the center armrest.

- ▷ Compartments in the doors.
- ▷ Pockets on the backrests of the front seats.

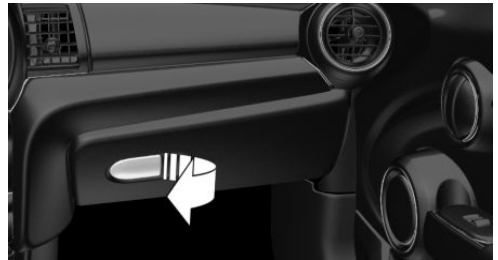
## GLOVE COMPARTMENT

### Information

#### WARNING

Folded open, the glove compartment protrudes in the car's interior. Objects in the glove compartment can be thrown into the car's interior while driving, e.g. in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is risk of injuries. Always close the glove compartment immediately after using it. ◀

### Opening



Pull the handle.

The light in the glove compartment switches on.

### Closing

Fold up the cover.

## COMPARTMENTS IN THE DOORS

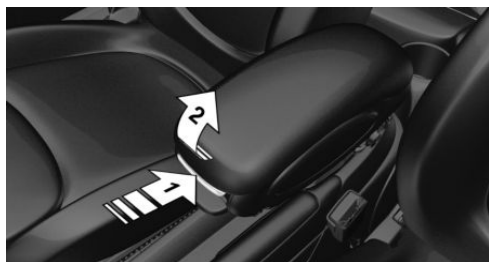
### WARNING

Breakable object, e.g. glass bottle, can break in the event of an accident. Broken glass can be scattered in the car's interior. There is risk of injuries. Do not stow any breakable objects in the car's interior. ◀

## CENTER ARMREST

The center armrest contains a storage compartment.

### Opening



Press button, arrow 1, and open center armrest upward, arrow 2.

### Adjusting the height



Press button, arrow 1, and swing center armrest upward or downward into the desired height, arrow 2.

## CUPHOLDERS

### Information

### WARNING

Unsuitable containers in the cup holder and hot beverages can damage the cup holder and increase the risk of injuries in the event of an accident. There is risk of injuries or risk of property damage. Use light-weight, unbreakable, and sealable containers. Do not transport hot beverages. Do not force objects into the cup holder. ◀

### Front



In the center console.

### Rear



On 3-door models: in front of the rear seats and in the and in the side armrests.





On 5-door models: in front of the rear seats.

## CLOTHES HOOKS



### WARNING

Clothing articles on the clothes hooks can obstruct the view while driving. There is risk of an accident. When suspending clothing articles from the hooks, ensure that they will not obstruct the driver's view. ◀

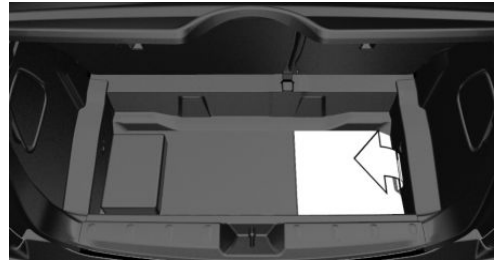


### WARNING

Improper use of the clothes hooks can lead to a danger of objects flying about during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is risk of injuries and risk of property damage. Only hang lightweight objects, e.g. clothing articles, from the clothes hooks. ◀

The clothes hooks are located above the side windows in the rear.

## STORAGE SPACE UNDER CARGO FLOOR PANEL



Located under the cargo floor panel on the right side is a trough for the onboard vehicle tool kit.

To remove the onboard vehicle tool kit, fold the right side of the cargo floor panel upward.

## VARIABLE TRUNK FLOOR

With the variable trunk floor, the trunk can be configured corresponding to transport requirements. To do this, remove the trunk floor, and insert it in the desired position.

Follow instructions on securing cargo, refer to page 161.

### Removing the cargo floor panel



On 5-door models: To change the position of the cargo floor panel, first fold up the rear part of the cargo floor panel.



Grasp the cargo floor panel in the rear and fold slightly upward. Next, pull it backward from the supports.

The cargo floor panel can be removed from the trunk above the tail lamps.

### Lower position



- ▷ Larger objects can be transported.
- ▷ Space for smaller objects remains between the fixed and variable trunk floor.

### Folded up position



#### WARNING

Improper use of the variable cargo floor panel can lead to a danger of objects flying about during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is risk of injuries and risk of property damage.

- ▷ Do not use the variable cargo floor panel to separate the cargo area and vehicle interior in the sense of a partition net.
- ▷ Only use the variable cargo floor in the folded-up position when the backrests are folded up and locked.

- ▷ Always secure cargo against shifting, using straps, belts and lashing eyes, e.g. ◀



Fold up the cargo floor panel in the lower position and push it behind the locks, arrow.

You've reached the maximum cargo height.

### Upper position



- ▷ With the backrests folded down, a long, flat loading surface is produced.
- ▷ On 3-door models:  
Maximum load in this position:  
330 lbs/150 kg.
- ▷ On 5-door models:  
Maximum load in this position:  
441 lbs/200 kg.
- ▷ Space for objects remains between the fixed and variable trunk floor.





**DRIVE ME.**

**AT A GLANCE**

**CONTROLS**

**DRIVING TIPS**

**MOBILITY**

**REFERENCE**

# THINGS TO REMEMBER WHEN DRIVING

## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## BREAKING-IN PERIOD

### General information

Moving parts need time to adjust to one another (break-in time).

The following instructions will help accomplish a long vehicle life and good efficiency.

During break-in, do not use the Launch Control, refer to page 74.

### Engine, transmission, and axle drive

#### Up to 1,200 miles/2,000 km

Do not exceed the maximum engine and road speed:

- ▷ For gasoline engine 4,500 rpm and 100 mph/160 km/h.

Avoid full load or kickdown under all circumstances.

#### From 1,200 miles/2,000 km

The engine and vehicle speed can gradually be increased.

### Tires

Tire traction is not optimal due to manufacturing circumstances when tires are brand-new; they achieve their full traction potential after a break-in time.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/300 km.

### Brake system

Brakes require an initial break-in period of approx. 300 miles/500 km to achieve optimal performance between brake discs and brake pads. Drive moderately during this break-in period.

### Clutch

The function of the clutch reaches its optimal level only after a distance driven of approx. 300 miles/500 km. During this break-in period, engage the clutch gently.

### Following part replacement

The same break-in procedures should be observed if any of the components above-mentioned have to be renewed in the course of the vehicle's operating life.

## GENERAL DRIVING NOTES

### Closing the tailgate



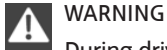
#### WARNING

An open tailgate protrudes from the vehicle and can endanger occupants and other traffic participants or damage the vehicle in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. In addition, exhaust fumes may enter the vehicle interior. There is risk of injuries or risk of property damage. Do not drive with the tailgate open. ◀

If driving with the tailgate open cannot be avoided:

- ▷ Close all windows and the glass sunroof.
- ▷ Greatly increase the air flow from the vents.
- ▷ Drive moderately.

### Hot exhaust system

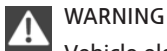


#### WARNING

During driving operation, high temperatures can occur underneath the body, e.g. caused by the exhaust gas system. If combustible materials, such as leaves or grass, come in contact with hot parts of the exhaust gas system, these materials can ignite. There is risk of injuries or risk of property damage.

Do not remove the heat shields installed and never apply undercoating to them. Make sure that no combustible materials can come in contact with hot vehicle parts in driving operation, idle or during parking. Do not touch the hot exhaust system. ◀

### Mobile communication devices in the vehicle



#### WARNING

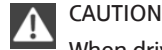
Vehicle electronics and mobile phones can influence one another. There is radiation due to the send operations of mobile phones. There is risk of injuries or risk of property damage. If possible, in the car's interior use only mobile phones with direct connections to an exterior antenna in order to exclude mutual disturbance and deflect the radiation from the car's interior. ◀

### Hydroplaning

On wet or slushy roads, a wedge of water can form between the tires and road surface.

This phenomenon is referred to as hydroplaning. It is characterized by a partial or complete loss of contact between the tires and the road surface, ultimately undermining your ability to steer and brake the vehicle.

### Driving through water



#### CAUTION

When driving too quickly through too deep water, water can enter into the engine compartment, the electrical system or the transmission. There is risk of property damage. When driving through water, do not exceed the maximum indicated water level and the maximum speed for driving through water. ◀

Drive through calm water only if it is not deeper than 9.8 inches/25 cm and at this height, no faster than walking speed, up to 3 mph/5 km/h.

### Braking safely

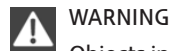
Your vehicle is equipped with ABS as a standard feature.

Applying the brakes fully is the most effective way of braking in situations needed.

Steering is still responsive. You can still avoid any obstacles with a minimum of steering effort.

Pulsation of the brake pedal and sounds from the hydraulic circuits indicate that ABS is in its active mode.

### Objects in the movement area around pedals and floor area



#### WARNING

Objects in the driver's floor area can limit the pedal distance or block a depressed pedal. There is risk of an accident. Stow objects in the vehicle such that they are secured and cannot enter into the driver's floor area. Use floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle and can be safely attached to the floor. Do not use loose floor mats and do not layer several floor mats. Make sure that there is sufficient clearance for the pedals. Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened again after they were removed, e.g. for cleaning. ◀

## Driving in wet conditions

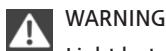
When roads are wet, salted, or in heavy rain, press brake pedal ever so gently every few miles.

Ensure that this action does not endanger other traffic.

The heat generated in this process helps dry the brake discs and pads.

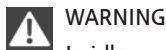
In this way braking efficiency will be available when you need it.

## Hills



### WARNING

Light but consistent brake pressure can lead to high temperatures, brakes wearing out and possibly even brake failure. There is risk of an accident. Avoid placing excessive stress on the brake system. ◀



### WARNING

In idle or with the engine switched off, safety-relevant functions are restricted or not available anymore, e.g. braking effect of the engine or braking force and steering support. There is risk of an accident. Do not drive in idle or with the engine switched off. ◀

Drive long or steep downhill gradients in the gear that requires least braking efforts. Otherwise the brakes may overheat and reduce brake efficiency.

You can increase the engine's braking effect by shifting down, going all the way to first gear, if needed.

## Brake disc corrosion

Corrosion on the brake discs and contamination on the brake pads are furthered by:

- ▷ Low mileage.
- ▷ Extended periods when the vehicle is not used at all.
- ▷ Infrequent use of the brakes.

Corrosion will built up when the maximum pressure applied to the brake pads during braking is not reached - thus discs don't get cleaned.

Corrosion buildup on the brake discs will cause a pulsating effect on the brakes in their response - generally that cannot be corrected.

## Condensation under the parked vehicle

When using the automatic climate control, condensation water develops collecting underneath the vehicle.

These traces of water under the vehicle are normal.

## Ground clearance



### CAUTION

If ground clearance is insufficient, there might be contact with the front or rear spoiler e.g. when driving over curbs or entering into underground car parking garages. There is risk of property damage. Ensure that there is sufficient ground clearance available. ◀



# LOADING

## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## INFORMATION



### WARNING

High gross weight can overheat the tires, damage them internally, and cause a sudden drop in tire inflation pressure. There is risk of an accident. Pay attention to the permitted load capacity of the tires and never exceed the permitted gross weight. ◀



### CAUTION

Fluids in the cargo area can cause damage. There is risk of property damage. Make sure that no fluids leak in the cargo area. ◀



### WARNING

Loose objects in the car's interior can be thrown into the car's interior while driving, e.g. in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is risk of injuries. Secure loose objects in the car's interior. ◀

## DETERMINING THE LOAD LIMIT

1. Locate the following statement on your vehicle's placard:
  - ▷ The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or YYY lbs. Otherwise, damage to the vehicle and unstable driving situations may result.



2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kilograms or YYY pounds.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity.
 

For example, if the YYY amount equals 1,000 lbs and there will be four 150 lbs passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 400 lbs: 1,000 lbs minus 600 lbs = 400 lbs.
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

## LOAD

On 3-door models



On 5-door models



The maximum load is the sum of the weight of the occupants and the cargo.

The greater the weight of the occupants, the less cargo that can be transported.

## STOWING CARGO

- ▷ Cover sharp edges and corners on the cargo.
- ▷ Heavy cargo: stow as far forward as possible, directly behind and at the bottom of the rear passenger seat backrests.
- ▷ Very heavy cargo: when the rear seat is not occupied, secure each of the outer safety belts in the opposite buckle.
- ▷ If necessary, fold down the rear backrests to stow cargo.
- ▷ Do not stack cargo above the top edge of the backrests.

## SECURING CARGO

### Information



#### WARNING

Improperly stowed objects can shift and be thrown into the car's interior, e.g. in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. Vehicle occupants can be hit and injured. There is risk of injuries. Stow and secure objects and cargo properly. ◀

- ▷ Smaller and lighter items: secure with retaining straps or with draw straps.
- ▷ Larger and heavy objects: secure with cargo straps.

Attach the cargo straps, retaining straps or draw straps to the lashing eyes in the trunk.

### Lashing eyes in the cargo area



Without storage compartment package: to secure the cargo there are two lashing eyes, arrow 1, in the cargo area.

With storage compartment package: to secure the cargo there are six lashing eyes, arrows 1 and 2, in the cargo area.

## ROOF-MOUNTED LUGGAGE RACK

### Information

Installation only possible with roof rack.

Roof racks are available as special accessories.

## Securing

Follow the installation instructions of the roof rack.

## Loading

Because roof racks raise the vehicle's center of gravity when loaded, they have a major effect on vehicle handling and steering response.

Therefore, note the following when loading and driving:

- ▷ Do not exceed the approved roof/axle loads and the approved gross vehicle weight.
- ▷ Be sure that adequate clearance is maintained for tilting and opening the glass sunroof.
- ▷ Distribute the roof load uniformly.
- ▷ The roof load should not extend past the loading area.
- ▷ Always place the heaviest pieces on the bottom.
- ▷ Secure the roof luggage firmly, e.g., tie with ratchet straps.
- ▷ Do not let objects project into the opening path of the tailgate.
- ▷ Drive cautiously and avoid sudden acceleration and braking maneuvers. Take corners gently.

## REAR LUGGAGE RACK

### General information

Installation only possible with rear luggage rack preparation.

Rear racks are available as special accessories.

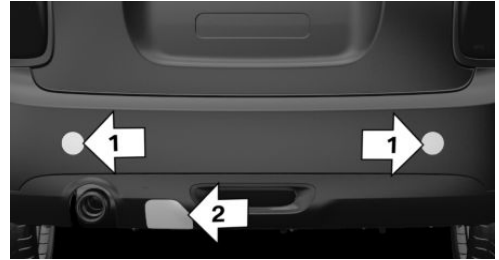
### Information

Follow the installation instructions of the rear luggage rack.

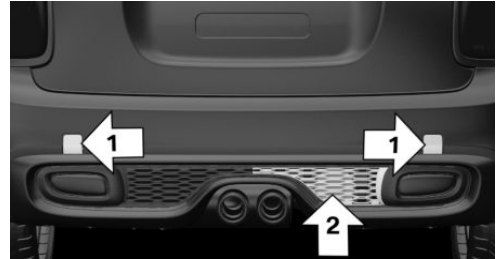
Drive cautiously and avoid sudden acceleration and braking maneuvers. Take corners gently.

## Securing

COOPER/COOPER D/ONE/ONE D



COOPER S/COOPER SD



The anchorage points, arrow 1, and the socket, arrow 2, are located below the covers in the bumper.

Remove the covers before installing the rear luggage rack.

## Power consumption

Before starting to drive, check the function of the tail lamps of the rear luggage rack.

The rear luggage rack lights must not consume more than:

- ▷ Turn signals: 42 watts per side.
- ▷ Rear lights: 50 watts per side.
- ▷ Brake lights: 84 watts in total.
- ▷ Rear fog lights: 42 watts in total.
- ▷ Backup lamp: 42 watts in total.

# SAVING FUEL

## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## GENERAL INFORMATION

Your vehicle contains advanced technology for the reduction of fuel consumption and emissions.

Fuel consumption depends on a number of different factors.

The implementation of certain measures, driving style and regular maintenance can influence fuel consumption and environmental impact.

## REMOVE UNNECESSARY CARGO

Additional weight increases fuel consumption.

## REMOVE ATTACHED PARTS FOLLOWING USE

Remove roof or rear luggage racks which are no longer required following use.

Attached parts on the vehicle impair the aerodynamics and increase the fuel consumption.

## CLOSE THE WINDOWS AND GLASS SUNROOF

Driving with the glass sunroof and windows open results in increased air resistance and raises fuel consumption.

## TIRES

### General information

Tires can affect fuel consumption in various ways, e.g., tire size may influence fuel consumption.

### Check the tire inflation pressure regularly

Check and, if needed, correct the tire inflation pressure at least twice a month and before starting on a long trip.

Low tire inflation pressure increases rolling resistance and thus raises fuel consumption and tire wear.

## DRIVE AWAY WITHOUT DELAY

Do not wait for the engine to warm-up while the vehicle remains stationary. Start driving right away, but at moderate engine speeds.

This is the fastest way for the cold engine to reach its operating temperature.

## LOOK WELL AHEAD WHEN DRIVING

Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.

By maintaining a suitable distance to the vehicle driving ahead of you.

Driving smoothly and proactively reduces fuel consumption.

## AVOID HIGH ENGINE SPEEDS

As a rule: driving at low engine speeds lowers fuel consumption and reduces wear.

Use 1st gear to get the vehicle moving. Starting with the 2nd gear, accelerate rapidly. When accelerating, shift up before reaching high engine speeds.

When you reach the desired speed, shift into the highest applicable gear and drive with the engine speed as low as possible and at a constant speed.

The gear shift indicator, refer to page 82, of your vehicle indicates the most fuel efficient gear.

## USE COASTING CONDITIONS

When approaching a red light, take your foot off the accelerator and let the vehicle coast to a halt.

For going downhill take your foot off the accelerator and let the vehicle roll.

The flow of fuel is interrupted while coasting.

## SWITCH OFF THE ENGINE DURING LONGER STOPS

Switch off the engine during longer stops, e.g., at traffic lights, railroad crossings or in traffic congestion.

### Auto Start/Stop function

The Auto Start/Stop function of your vehicle automatically switches off the engine during a stop.

If the engine is switched off and then restarted rather than leaving the engine running constantly, fuel consumption and emissions are reduced. Savings can begin within a few seconds of switching off the engine.

In addition, fuel consumption is also determined by other factors, such as driving style, road conditions, maintenance or environmental factors.

## SWITCH OFF ANY FUNCTIONS THAT ARE NOT CURRENTLY NEEDED

Functions such as seat heating and the rear window defroster require a lot of energy and consume additional fuel, especially in city and stop-and-go traffic.

Therefore, switch off these functions if they are not actually needed.

## HAVE MAINTENANCE CARRIED OUT

Have vehicles maintained regularly to achieve optimal vehicle efficiency and service life. MINI recommends that maintenance work be performed by a MINI dealer's service center.

For information on the MINI Maintenance Systems, refer to page 200.

## GREEN MODE

### The concept

The GREEN mode supports a driving style that saves on fuel consumption. For this purpose, the engine control and comfort features, e. g. the climate control output, are adjusted.

For Steptronic transmission:

The Coasting driving condition is enabled under certain conditions.

Under certain conditions the engine is automatically decoupled from the transmission in selector lever position D. The vehicle continues traveling with the engine idling to reduce fuel consumption. Selector lever position D remains engaged. An indicator provides information about the distance traveled in Coasting mode.

In addition, context-sensitive instructions are displayed to assist with an optimized fuel consumption driving style.

The achieved extended range is displayed in the instrument cluster.

## Overview

The system includes the following MINIMAL functions and displays:

- ▷ GREEN bonus range, refer to page 167.
- ▷ GREEN tips driving instruction, refer to page 167.
- ▷ GREEN climate control, refer to page 166.
- ▷ MINIMALISM analyzer, refer to page 169.
- ▷ Coasting driving condition, refer to page 168.

## Activating GREEN mode




Turn Driving Dynamics Control to the right until GREEN mode is displayed in the instrument cluster.

## Configuring GREEN mode

### Via the Driving Dynamics Control


1. Activating GREEN mode.
2. "Configure GREEN"
3. Configure the program.

### Via onboard monitor:

1.  "Settings"

## 2. "GREEN Mode"

or

1.  "Settings"
2. "Driving mode"
3. "Configure GREEN"

Configure the program.

## GREEN tip

- ▷ "Tip at:"  
Set the GREEN mode speed at which a GREEN mode tip is to be displayed.
- ▷ "GREEN speed warning":  
Displays a reminder when the set GREEN mode speed is exceeded.

## Coasting

Fuel-efficiency can be optimized by disengaging the engine and Coasting, refer to page 168, with the engine idling.

This function is only available in GREEN mode.

## GREEN climate control

"GREEN climate control"

Climate control is set to be fuel-efficient.

By making a slight change to the set temperature, or adjusting the rate of heating or cooling of the car's interior fuel consumption can be economized.

The outputs of the seat heater and the exterior. Additionally heat output to seats and exterior mirror is reduced.

Exterior mirror heat is available when outside temperatures are very low.

## GREEN potential

The percentage of potential savings that can be achieved with the current configuration is displayed.

## Display in the instrument cluster

### GREEN bonus range

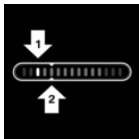


An adjusted driving style helps you extend your driving range. This may be displayed as the bonus range in the instrument cluster.

The bonus range is shown in the range display. The bonus range is automatically reset every time the vehicle is refueled.

- ▶ Green display: efficient driving style.
- ▶ Gray display: adjust driving style, e. g. by backing off the accelerator pedal.

### Driving style



A bar display in the instrument cluster indicates your current driving efficiency.

Mark in the left area, arrow 1: display for energy recovered by coasting or when braking.

Mark in the right area, arrow 2: display when accelerating.

Your driving style's efficiency is shown by the bar's color:

- ▶ Green display: efficient driving style as long as the mark moves within the green range.
- ▶ Gray display: adjust driving style, e. g. by backing off the accelerator pedal.

The display switches to green as soon as all conditions for fuel-efficiency-optimized driving are met.

## GREEN tip driving instruction



Instructions tell you to switch to a more fuel-efficient driving style when you back off the accelerator.

### Information

The driving style display and GREEN mode tips in the instrument cluster appear when the GREEN mode display is activated.

Activating driving style and GREEN mode tips:

1. "Settings"
2. "Instrument cluster"
3. "GREEN Info"

### GREEN tip symbols

An additional symbol and text instructions are displayed.


Symbol	Measure
	For efficient driving back off the accelerator or delay accelerating to allow time to assess road conditions.
	Reduce speed to the selected GREEN speed.
	Steptronic transmission: switch from M/S to D or avoid manual shift interventions.

Symbol	Measure
	Manual transmission: follow shifting instructions.
	Manual transmission: engage neutral for engine stop.

## Indications on the Control Display

### MINIMALISM

Information on fuel consumption and technology can be displayed while driving.

-  "Vehicle info"
- "MINIMALISM"

### Displaying MINIMALISM info

The current efficiency can be displayed.

 "MINIMALISM info"

The following systems are displayed:

- ▷ Auto Start/Stop function.
- ▷ Energy recovery.
- ▷ Climate control output.
- ▷ Coasting.

### Displaying GREEN mode tips

 "GREEN tips"

Driving instruction and an additional symbol are displayed.

Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

## Coasting

### The concept

The system helps to conserve fuel.

To do this, under certain conditions the engine is automatically decoupled from the transmission when selector lever position D is set. The vehicle continues traveling with the engine

idling to reduce fuel consumption. Selector lever position D remains engaged.

This driving condition is referred to as coasting.

As soon as the brake or accelerator pedal is depressed, the engine is automatically coupled to the transmission again.

### Information

Coasting is a component of the GREEN driving mode, refer to page 165.

Coasting is automatically activated when GREEN mode is called via the Driving Dynamics Control, refer to page 117.

The function is available in a certain speed range.

A proactively driving style helps the driver to use the function as often as possible and supports the fuel-conserving effect of coasting.

### Safety mode

The function is not available under one of the following conditions.

- ▷ DSC OFF or TRACTION activated.
- ▷ Driving in the dynamic limit range and on steep uphill or downhill grades.
- ▷ Battery charge status temporarily too low or vehicle electrical system drawing excessive current.
- ▷ Cruise control activated.

### Functional requirements

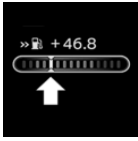
In GREEN mode, this function is available in a speed range from approximately 30 mph, approx. 50 km/h to 100 mph, approx. 160 km/h, if the following conditions are met:

- ▷ Accelerator pedal and brake pedal are not operated.
- ▷ The selector lever is in selector lever position D.
- ▷ Engine and transmission are at operating temperature.



## Display

### Display in the instrument cluster



The mark in the bar display below the tachometer is highlighted green and appears at the zero point. The tachometer approximately indicates idle speed.

### Indications on the Control Display

The Coasting driving condition is displayed in MINIMALISM Info while this driving mode is active.

The distance traveled in the Coasting driving condition is indicated by a counter.



Color code green, arrow 1: distance traveled in the Coasting driving condition. Symbol, arrow 2: coasting driving condition.

### Displaying MINIMALISM info

1. "Vehicle info"
2. "MINIMALISM"
3. "MINIMALISM info"

### Deactivating the system manually

The function can be deactivated in the Configure GREEN mode, refer to page 166, menu, e.g., to use the braking effect of the engine when traveling downhill.

Settings are saved for the profile currently being used.

## MINIMALISM driving style analysis

### The concept

In this situation the system helps develop an especially efficient driving style and to conserve fuel.

For this purpose, the driving style is analyzed. The assessment is done in various categories and is displayed on the Control Display.

Using this indication, the individual driving style can be oriented toward conserving fuel.

The last fifteen minutes of a trip are evaluated.

The range of the vehicle can be extended by an efficient driving style. This gain in range is displayed as a bonus range in the instrument cluster and on the Control Display.

### Functional requirement

The function is only available in GREEN mode.

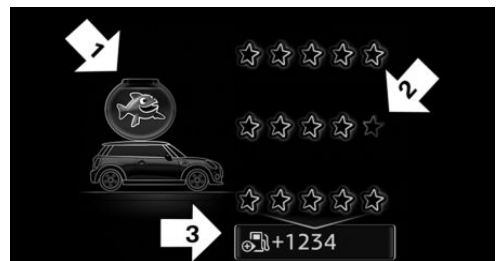
### Calling up MINIMALISM Analyser

#### Via the Driving Dynamics Control

1. Activate GREEN mode.
2. "MINIMALISM"
3. Select the symbol.

## Display

### Display on the Control Display



The display of the MINIMALISM Analyser consists of a fish, which is riding along in a glass of water on the roof of the MINI and a table of values that rates the driving style in various cat-

egories. The bonus range achieved by driving style that minimizes fuel consumption is displayed below the table of values.

The fish and the movements of the water in the glass symbolize the efficiency of the driving style. The more efficient the driving style, the less the water sloshes around in the glass and the better is the fish's mood, arrow 1.

The table of values includes asterisks, arrow 2. The more efficient the driving style, the more stars are included in the table and the faster the bonus range increases, arrow 3.

If by contrast the driving style is inefficient, the water oscillates, the mood of the fish is sullied and a reduced number of asterisks is displayed.

To assist with an efficient driving style, GREEN tips are displayed during driving.

Tips about the energy saving driving style, Conserving fuel, refer to page [164](#).





**MOVE ME.**

**AT A GLANCE**

**CONTROLS**

**DRIVING TIPS**

**MOBILITY**

**REFERENCE**

# REFUELING

## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## INFORMATION

Observe the fuel recommendation, refer to page 176, prior to refueling.

### CAUTION

With a range of less than 30 miles/50 km it is possible that the engine will no longer have sufficient fuel. Engine functions are no longer ensured. There is risk of property damage. Refuel promptly. ◀

## FUEL LID

### Opening

1. Grasp the fuel filler flap at the rear edge and open it.



2. Turn the tank lid counterclockwise.



3. Place the tank lid in the bracket attached to the fuel filler flap.



### Closing

1. Fit the lid and turn it clockwise until you clearly hear a click.
2. Close the fuel filler flap.

### WARNING

The retaining strap of the fuel cap be jammed and crushed during closing. In this case, the lid cannot be correctly closed and fuel vapors or fuel can escape. There is risk of injuries or risk of property damage. Pay attention that the retaining strap is not jammed or crushed when closing the lid. ◀

### Manually unlocking fuel filler flap

E. g. in the event of an electrical malfunction. The release is located in the trunk.



Remove the cover.

Pull the green knob with the fuel pump symbol.  
This releases the fuel filler flap.

## OBSERVE THE FOLLOWING WHEN REFUELING



### CAUTION

Fuels are toxic and aggressive. Overfilling of the fuel tank can damage the fuel system. On contact with painted surfaces, damage may occur to these surfaces. The environment is polluted. There is risk of property damage. Avoid overfilling. ◀

The fuel tank is full when the filler nozzle clicks off the first time.

Observe safety regulations posted at the gas station.

# FUEL

## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

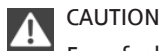
This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## FUEL RECOMMENDATION

### General information

Depending on the region, many gas stations sell fuel that has been customized to winter or summer conditions. Fuel that is available in winter helps make a cold start easier, e.g.

### Information



#### CAUTION

Even fuels that conform to the specifications can be of low quality. This may cause engine problems, for instance poor engine start-up behavior, poor handling and/or poor performance. There is risk of property damage. In case of engine problems, switch gas stations or use a brand name fuel with a higher octane rating. ◀

### Gasoline

For the best fuel efficiency, the gasoline should be sulfur-free or very low in sulfur content.

Fuels that are marked on the gas pump as containing metal must not be used.



#### CAUTION

Even small amounts of wrong fuel or wrong fuel additives can damage the fuel system and the engine. Furthermore, the catalytic converter is permanently damaged. There is risk of property damage. Do not refuel or add the following in the case of gasoline engines:

- ▷ Leaded gasoline.
- ▷ Metallic additives, e.g. manganese or iron.

Do not press the Start/Stop button after refueling the wrong fuel. Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. ◀

Fuels with a maximum ethanol content of 25 %, i. e. E10 or E25, may be used for refueling.

Ethanol should satisfy the following quality standards:

US: ASTM 4806-xx

CAN: CGSB-3.511-xx

xx: comply with the current standard in each case.



#### CAUTION

Wrong fuels can damage the fuel system and the engine. There is risk of property damage. Do not use a fuel with a higher ethanol percentage than recommended or one with other types of alcohol, e.g. M5 to M100. ◀

### Recommended fuel grade

MINI recommends AKI 91.

John Cooper Works:

MINI recommends AKI 93.

### Minimum fuel grade

MINI recommends AKI 89.



**CAUTION**

Fuel that does not comply with the minimum quality can compromise engine function or cause engine damage. There is risk of property damage. Do not fill with fuel that does not comply with the minimum quality. ◀

If you use gasoline with this minimum AKI Rating, the engine may produce knocking sounds when starting at high outside temperatures. This has no effect on the engine life.

**CAUTION**

The use of poor-quality fuels may result in harmful engine deposits or damage. Additionally, problems relating to drivability, starting and stalling, especially under certain environmental conditions such as high ambient temperature and high altitude, may occur.

If drivability problems are encountered, we recommend switching to a high quality gasoline brand and a higher octane grade — AKI number — for a few tank fills. To avoid harmful engine deposits, it is highly recommended to purchase gasoline from Top Tier retailers.

Failure to comply with these recommendations may result in the need for unscheduled maintenance. ◀

# WHEELS AND TIRES

## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## TIRE INFLATION PRESSURE

### Safety information

The tire characteristics and tire inflation pressure influence the following:

- ▷ The service life of the tires.
- ▷ Road safety.
- ▷ Driving comfort.

### Checking the tire inflation pressure



#### WARNING

A tire with low or missing tire inflation pressure impacts handling, such as steering and braking response. There is risk of an accident. Regularly check the tire inflation pressure, and correct it as needed, e.g. twice a month and before a long trip. ◀

Tires have a natural, consistent loss of tire inflation pressure.

Tires heat up while driving, and the tire inflation pressure increases along with the tire's temperature. The tire inflation pressure specifications relate to cold tires or tires with the ambient temperature.

Only check the tire inflation pressure when the tires are cold. This means after driving no more than 1.25 miles/2 km or when the vehicle has been parked for at least 2 hours.

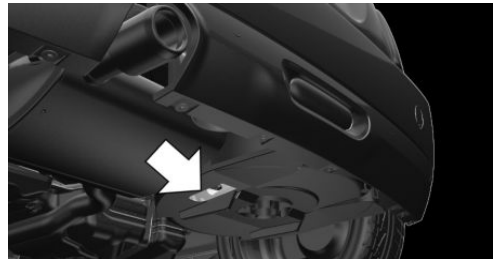
The displays of inflation devices may under-read by up to 0.1 bar.

For Flat Tire Monitor: after correcting the tire inflation pressure, reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor.

For Tire Pressure Monitor: after correcting the tire inflation pressure, reset the Tire Pressure Monitor.

- ▷ Reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor.
- ▷ Reinitialize the Tire Pressure Monitor.

### Checking the inflation pressure of the emergency wheel



Located behind the bumper on the underside of the vehicle is an opening for checking the tire inflation pressure.

### Pressure specifications

The tire inflation pressure table, refer to page 179, contains all tire inflation pressure specifications for the specified tire sizes at the ambient temperature. The tire inflation pressure values apply to tire sizes approved by the manufacturer of the vehicle for the vehicle type.

To identify the correct tire inflation pressure, please note the following:

- ▷ Tire sizes of your vehicle.
- ▷ Maximum permitted driving speed.

### Tire inflation pressures up to 100 mph/160 km/h

For speeds of up to 100 mph/160 km/h and for optimum driving comfort, note the pressure values in the tire inflation pressure table, refer to page 179, and adjust as necessary.



These pressure values can also be found on the tire inflation pressure label on the driver's door pillar.

Do not exceed a speed of 100 mph/160 km/h.

### Tire inflation pressure values up to 100 mph/160 km/h


#### On 3-door models: COOPER

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
175/60 R 16 86 H M +S XL RSC	2.4 / 35	2.4 / 35
175/65 R 15 84 H M +S A/S Std		
175/65 R 15 84 H M +S Std		
175/65 R 15 84 H Std		
195/55 R 16 87 H M +S RSC		
195/55 R 16 87 V M +S A/S RSC		
195/55 R 16 87 W RSC		
205/45 R 17 88 V M +S XL A/S RSC		
205/45 R 17 88 V M +S XL RSC		
205/45 R 17 88 W XL RSC		
205/40 R 18 86 W XL RSC		
Emergency wheel T 115/70 R 15 90 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h 4.2 / 60	

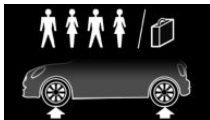
**On 3-door models: COOPER S**

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
195/55 R 16 87 H M +S RSC	2.4 / 35	2.4 / 35
195/55 R 16 87 V M +S A/S RSC		
195/55 R 16 87 W RSC		
175/60 R 16 86 H M +S XL RSC	2.6 / 38	2.4 / 35
205/45 R 17 88 V M +S XL A/S RSC		
205/45 R 17 88 V M +S XL RSC		
205/45 R 17 88 W XL RSC		
205/40 R 18 86 W XL RSC		

**On 3-door models: JOHN COOPER WORKS**

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
185/50 R 17 86 H M +S XL RSC	2.9 / 42	2.7 / 39
205/45 R 17 88 W XL RSC		
205/45 R 17 88 V M +S XL A/S RSC		
205/45 R 17 88 V M +S XL RSC		
205/40 R 18 86 W XL RSC		

**On 5-door models: COOPER**

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
175/65 R 15 84 H M +S A/S Std	2.5 / 36	2.3 / 33
175/65 R 15 84 H M +S Std		
175/65 R 15 84 H Std		
195/55 R 16 87 H M +S RSC		
195/55 R 16 87 V M +S A/S RSC		
195/55 R 16 87 W RSC		

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
205/45 R 17 88 V M +S XL A/S RSC	2.5 / 36	2.4 / 35
205/45 R 17 88 V M +S XL RSC		
205/45 R 17 88 W XL RSC		
175/60 R 16 86 H M +S XL RSC	2.6 / 38	2.6 / 38
205/40 R 18 86 W XL RSC		
Emergency wheel T 115/70 R 15 90 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h 4.2 / 60	

### Tire inflation pressures at max. speeds above 100 mph/160 km/h



#### WARNING

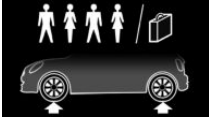
In order to drive at maximum speeds in excess of 100 mph/160 km/h, please observe, and, if necessary, adjust tire pressures for speeds exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h from the relevant table on the following pages. Otherwise tire damage and accidents could occur. ◀

### On 5-door models: COOPER S

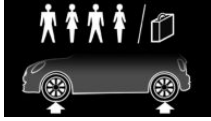
Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
195/55 R 16 87 H M +S RSC	2.5 / 36	2.3 / 33
195/55 R 16 87 V M +S A/S RSC		
195/55 R 16 87 W RSC		
175/60 R 16 86 H M +S XL RSC	2.7 / 39	2.7 / 39
205/45 R 17 88 V M +S XL A/S RSC		
205/45 R 17 88 V M +S XL RSC		
205/45 R 17 88 W XL RSC		
205/40 R 18 86 W XL RSC		

**Tire inflation pressure values over 100 mph/160 km/h**

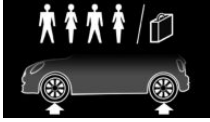
**On 3-door models: COOPER**

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
175/65 R 15 84 H M +S A/S Std	2.8 / 41	2.6 / 38
175/65 R 15 84 H M +S Std		
175/65 R 15 84 H Std		
175/60 R 16 86 H M +S XL RSC		
195/55 R 16 87 H M +S RSC		
195/55 R 16 87 V M +S A/S RSC		
195/55 R 16 87 W RSC		
205/45 R 17 88 V M +S XL A/S RSC		
205/45 R 17 88 V M +S XL RSC		
205/45 R 17 88 W XL RSC		
205/40 R 18 86 W XL RSC		
Compact wheel	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h	
T 115/70 R 15 90 M	4.2 / 60	

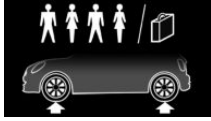
**On 3-door models: COOPER S**

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
195/55 R 16 87 H M +S RSC	2.8 / 41	2.6 / 38
195/55 R 16 87 V M +S A/S RSC		
195/55 R 16 87 W RSC		
175/60 R 16 86 H M +S XL RSC	3.1 / 45	2.9 / 42
205/45 R 17 88 V M +S XL A/S RSC		
205/45 R 17 88 V M +S XL RSC		
205/45 R 17 88 W XL RSC		
205/40 R 18 86 W XL RSC		

### On 3-door models: JOHN COOPER WORKS

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
185/50 R 17 86 H M+S XL RSC	3.1 / 45	2.9 / 42
205/45 R 17 88 W XL RSC		
205/45 R 17 88 V M +S XL A/S RSC		
205/45 R 17 88 V M +S XL RSC		
205/40 R 18 86 W XL RSC	3.4 / 49	3.2 / 46

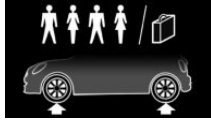
### On 5-door models: COOPER

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
175/65 R 15 84 H M +S A/S Std	2.8 / 41	2.6 / 38
175/65 R 15 84 H M +S Std		
175/65 R 15 84 H Std		
195/55 R 16 87 H M +S RSC		
195/55 R 16 87 V M +S A/S RSC		
195/55 R 16 87 W RSC		
205/45 R 17 88 V M +S XL A/S RSC		
205/45 R 17 88 V M +S XL RSC		
205/45 R 17 88 W XL RSC		
175/60 R 16 86 H M +S XL RSC	2.8 / 41	2.8 / 41
205/40 R 18 86 W XL RSC		
Compact wheel T 115/70 R 15 90 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h	
	4.2 / 60	

## On 5-door models: COOPER S

Tire size Pressure specifications in bar/PSI

Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires



195/55 R 16 87 H M +S RSC	2.8 / 41	2.8 / 41
195/55 R 16 87 V M +S A/S RSC		
195/55 R 16 87 W RSC		
175/60 R 16 86 H M +S XL RSC	3.1 / 45	3.1 / 45
205/45 R 17 88 V M +S XL A/S RSC		
205/45 R 17 88 V M +S XL RSC		
205/45 R 17 88 W XL RSC		
205/40 R 18 86 W XL RSC		

## TIRE IDENTIFICATION MARKS

### Tire size

205/45 R 17 84 V

205: nominal width in mm

45: aspect ratio in %

R: radial tire code

17: rim diameter in inches

84: load rating, not for ZR tires

V: speed rating, before the R on ZR tires

### Speed letter

T = up to 118 mph, 190 km/h

H = up to 131 mph, 210 km/h

V = up to 150 mph, 240 km/h

W = up to 167 mph, 270 km/h

Y = up to 186 mph, 300 km/h

### Tire Identification Number

DOT code: DOT xxxx xxx 0115

xxxx: manufacturer code for the tire brand

xxx: tire size and tire design

0115: tire age

Tires with DOT codes meet the guidelines of the U.S. Department of Transportation.

### Tire age

DOT ... 0115: the tire was manufactured in the 1st week of 2015.

### Recommendation

Regardless of wear and tear, replace tires at least every 6 years.

### Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

For example: Treadwear 200; Traction AA; Temperature A

### DOT Quality Grades

Treadwear

Traction AA A B C

Temperature A B C

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

### Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half, 1 <sub>g</sub>, times as well on the government course as a tire graded



100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

### Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C.

Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

### Temperature

The temperature grades are A, the highest, B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades Band A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.



#### WARNING

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure. ◀

### RSC – Run-flat tires

Run-flat tires, refer to page 187, are labeled with a circular symbol containing the letters RSC marked on the sidewall.

### M+S

Winter and all-season tires with better cold weather performance than summer tires.

## TIRE TREAD

### Summer tires

Do not drive with a tire tread depth of less than 0.12 in/3 mm.

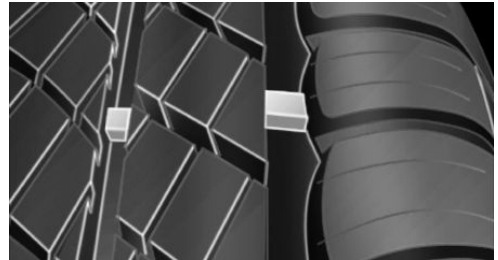
There is an increased danger of hydroplaning if the tread depth is less than 0.12 in/3 mm.

### Winter tires

Do not drive with a tire tread depth of less than 0.16 in/4 mm.

Below a tread depth of 0.16 in/4 mm, tires are less suitable for winter operation.

### Minimum tread depth



Wear indicators are distributed around the tire's circumference and have the legally required minimum height of 0.063 in/1.6 mm.

They are marked on the side of the tire with TWI, Tread Wear Indicator.

## TIRE DAMAGE

### General information

Inspect your tires often for damage, foreign objects lodged in the tread, and tread wear.

### Information

Driving over rough or damaged road surfaces, as well as debris, curbs and other obstacles can cause serious damage to wheels, tires and suspension parts. This is more likely to occur with low-profile tires, which provide less cushioning between the wheel and the road. Be careful to avoid road hazards and reduce your speed, especially if your vehicle is equipped with low-profile tires.

Indications of tire damage or other vehicle malfunctions:

- ▷ Unusual vibrations while driving.
- ▷ Unusual handling such as a strong tendency to pull to the left or right.

Damage can, e. g., be caused by driving over curbs, road damage, or similar things.

#### WARNING

Damaged tires can lose tire inflation pressure, which can lead to loss of vehicle control. There is risk of an accident. If tire damage is suspected while driving, immediately reduce speed and stop. Have wheels and tires checked. For this purpose, drive carefully to the nearest dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. Have vehicle towed or transported as needed. ◀

#### WARNING

Damaged tires can lose tire inflation pressure, which can lead to loss of vehicle control. There is risk of an accident. Do not repair damaged tires, but have them replaced. ◀

## CHANGING WHEELS AND TIRES

### Mounting

Have mounting and wheel balancing carried out by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

### Wheel and tire combination

You can ask the dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop about the right wheel/tire combination and wheel rim versions for the vehicle.

Incorrect wheel and tire combinations impair the function of a variety of systems such as ABS or DSC.

To maintain good handling and vehicle response, use only tires with a single tread configuration from a single manufacturer.

Following tire damage, have the original wheel and tire combination remounted on the vehicle as soon as possible.

#### WARNING

Wheels and tires which are not suitable for your vehicle can damage parts of the vehicle, e. g. due to contact with the body due to tolerances despite the same official size rating. There is risk of an accident. ◀

### Recommended tire brands



For each tire size, the manufacturer of your vehicle recommends certain tire brands. These can be identified by a star on the tire sidewall.

## New tires

Tire traction is not optimal due to manufacturing circumstances when tires are brand-new; they achieve their full traction potential after a break-in time.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/300 km.

## Retreaded tires

The manufacturer of your vehicle does not recommend the use of retreaded tires.



### WARNING

Retreaded tires can have different tire casing structures. With advanced age the service life can be limited. There is risk of an accident. Do not use retreaded tires. ◀

## Winter tires

Winter tires are recommended for operating on winter roads.

Although so-called all-season M+S tires provide better winter traction than summer tires, they do not provide the same level of performance as winter tires.

## Maximum speed of winter tires

If the maximum speed of the vehicle is higher than the permissible speed for the winter tires, then a respective symbol is displayed in your field of vision. The plate is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

With mounted winter tires, observe and adhere to the permissible maximum speed.

## Run-flat tires

If you are already using run-flat tires, for your own safety you should replace them only with the same kind. No spare tire is available in the case of a flat tire. A dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop will be glad to answer additional questions at any time.

## Rotating wheels between axles

Different wear patterns can occur on the front and rear axles depending on individual driving conditions.

The tires can be rotated between the axles to achieve even wear. A dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop will be glad to answer additional questions at any time.

After rotating, check the tire pressure and correct if needed.

## Storage

Store wheels and tires in a cool, dry place with as little exposure to light as possible.

Always protect tires against all contact with oil, grease and fuels.

Do not exceed the maximum tire inflation pressure indicated on the side wall of the tire.

## RUN-FLAT TIRES

### Label



RSC label on the tire sidewall.

The wheels are composed of tires that are self-supporting to a limited degree.

The support of the sidewall allows the tire to remain drivable to a restricted degree in the event of a tire inflation pressure loss.

Continued driving with a damaged tire, refer to page 107.

Continued driving with a damaged tire, refer to page 104.

### Changing run-flat tires

For your own safety, only use run-flat tires. No spare tire is available in the case of a flat tire. A dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop will be glad to answer additional questions at any time.

## REPAIRING A FLAT TIRE

### Safety measures

- ▷ Park the vehicle as far away as possible from passing traffic and on solid ground.
- ▷ Switch on the hazard warning system.
- ▷ Secure the vehicle against rolling away by setting the parking brake.
- ▷ Turn the steering wheel until the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position and engage the steering wheel lock.
- ▷ Have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and ensure that they remain outside the immediate area in a safe place, such as behind a guardrail.
- ▷ If necessary, set up a warning triangle at an appropriate distance.

## MOBILITY SYSTEM

### The concept

With the Mobility System, minor tire damage can be sealed quickly to enable continued travel. To accomplish this, sealant is pumped into the tires, which seals the damage from the inside.

The compressor can be used to check the tire inflation pressure.

### Information

- ▷ Follow the instructions on using the Mobility System found on the compressor and sealant container.
- ▷ Use of the Mobility System may be ineffective if the tire puncture measures approx. 1/8 in/4 mm or more.
- ▷ Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop if the tire cannot be made drivable.
- ▷ If possible, do not remove foreign bodies that have penetrated the tire.
- ▷ Pull the speed limit sticker off the sealant container and apply it to the steering wheel.
- ▷ The use of a sealant can damage the TPM wheel electronics. In this case, have the electronics checked at the next opportunity and have them replaced if needed.



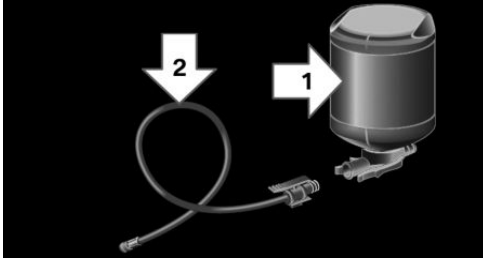
### DANGER

If the exhaust pipe is blocked or ventilation is insufficient, harmful exhaust gases can enter into the vehicle. The exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide, an odorless and colorless but highly toxic gas. In enclosed areas, exhaust gases can also accumulate outside of the vehicle. There is danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe free and ensure sufficient ventilation. ◀

### Storage

The Mobility System is located under the cargo floor panel.

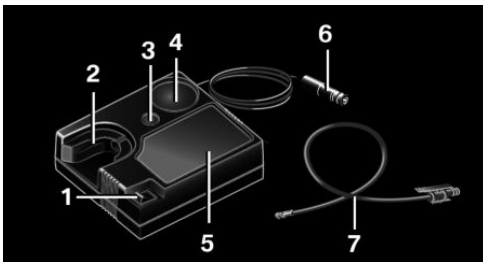
## Sealant container



- ▷ Sealant container, arrow 1.
- ▷ Filling hose, arrow 2.

Observe use-by date on the sealant container.

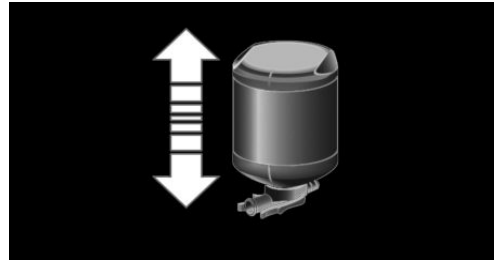
## Compressor



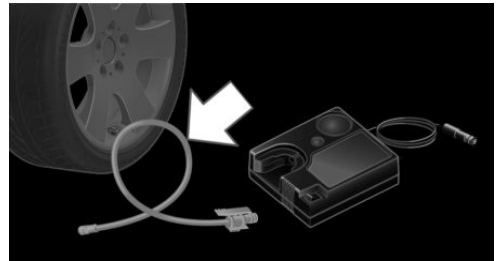
- 1 On/off switch
- 2 Holder for bottle
- 3 Reduce inflation pressure
- 4 Inflation pressure dial
- 5 Compressor
- 6 Connector/cable for socket
- 7 Connection hose — stowed in the bottom of the compressor

## Filling the tire with sealant

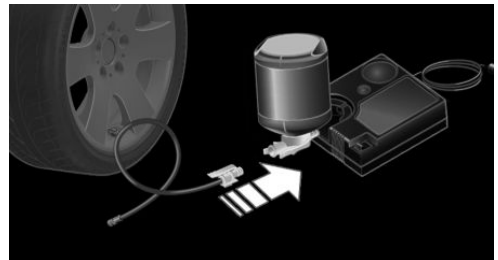
1. Shake the sealant container.



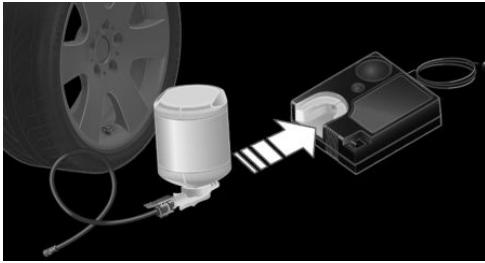
2. Take the connection hose completely out of the compressor housing. Do not kink the hose.



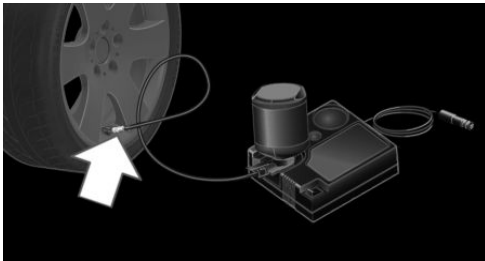
3. Attach the connection hose to the connector of the sealant container, ensuring that it engages audibly.



- Slide the sealant container upright into the holder on the compressor housing, ensuring that it engages audibly.



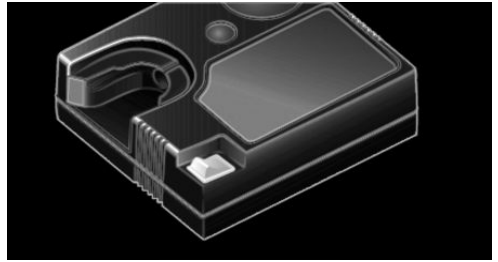
- Screw the connection hose onto the tire valve of the nonworking wheel.



- With the compressor switched off, insert the plug into a power socket inside the vehicle.



- With the ignition turned on or the engine running, switch on the compressor.



Let the compressor run for approx. 3 to 8 minutes to fill the tire with sealant and achieve a tire inflation pressure of approx. 2.5 bar.

While the tire is being filled with sealant, the tire inflation pressure may sporadically reach approx. 5 bar. Do not switch off the compressor at this point.

#### CAUTION

The compressor can overheat during extended operation. There is risk of property damage. Do not run the compressor for more than 10 min. ◀

If a tire inflation pressure of 2 bar is not reached:

- Switch off the compressor.
  - Unscrew the filling hose from the wheel.
  - Drive forward and back to distribute the sealant in the tire.
  - Inflate the tire again using the compressor.
- If a tire inflation pressure of 2 bar cannot be reached, contact your dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

#### Stowing the Mobility System

- Remove the connection hose of the sealant container from the wheel.
- Remove the connection hose from the sealant container.

3. Wrap the empty sealant container and connection hose in suitable material to avoid dirtying the trunk.
4. Stow the Mobility System back in the vehicle.

### Distributing the sealant

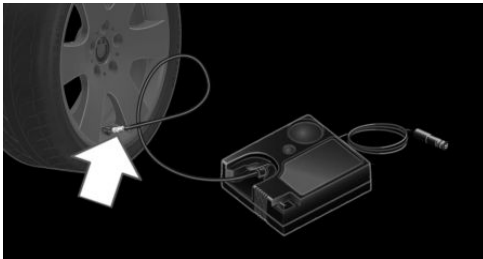
Immediately drive approx. 5 mls/10 km/h to ensure that the sealant is evenly distributed in the tire.

Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

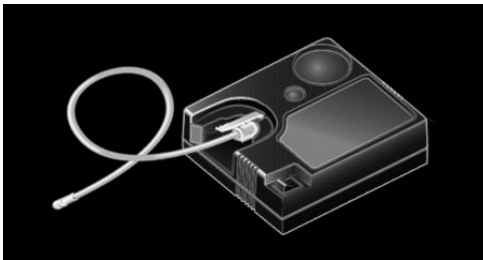
If possible, do not drive at speeds less than 12 mph/20 km/h.

### To correct the tire inflation pressure

1. Stop at a suitable location.
2. Screw the connection hose onto the tire valve stem.



3. Attach the connection hose directly to the compressor.



4. Insert the connector into a power socket inside the vehicle.



5. Correct the tire inflation pressure to 2.5 bar.
  - ▷ Increase pressure: with the ignition turned on or the engine running, switch on the compressor.
  - ▷ To reduce the pressure: press the button on the compressor.

### Continuing the trip

Do not exceed the maximum permissible speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

Reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor, refer to page 106.

Reinitialize the Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 102.

Replace the nonworking tire and the sealant container of the Mobility System as soon as possible.

## SNOW CHAINS

### Fine-link snow chains

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends use of fine-link snow chains. Certain types of fine-link snow chains have been tested by the manufacturer of the vehicle and recommended as road-safe and suitable.

Information regarding suitable snow chains is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

## Use

Use only in pairs on the front wheels, equipped with the tires of the following size:

- ▷ 175/65 R 15.
- ▷ 175/60 R 16.

John Cooper Works:

- ▷ 185/50 R 17.

Follow the chain manufacturer's instructions.

Make sure that the snow chains are always sufficiently tight. Retighten as needed according to the chain manufacturer's instructions.

Do not initialize the Flat Tire Monitor after mounting snow chains, as doing so may result in incorrect readings.

Do not initialize the Tire Pressure Monitor after mounting snow chains, as doing so may result in incorrect readings.

When driving with snow chains, briefly activate Dynamic Traction Control if needed.

## Maximum speed with snow chains

Do not exceed a speed of 30 mph/50 km/h when using snow chains.



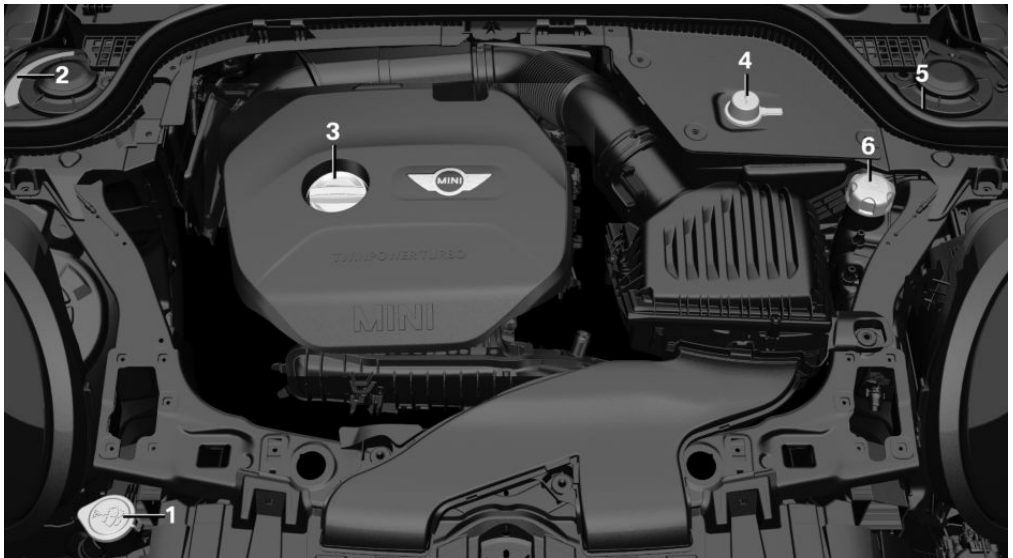
# ENGINE COMPARTMENT

## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not

necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## IMPORTANT FEATURES IN THE ENGINE COMP.



- |   |                               |   |                                  |
|---|-------------------------------|---|----------------------------------|
| 1 | Washer fluid reservoir        | 4 | Jump-starting, positive terminal |
| 2 | Vehicle identification number | 5 | Jump-starting, negative terminal |
| 3 | Oil filler neck               | 6 | Coolant reservoir                |

## HOOD

### Information

#### WARNING

Improperly executed work in the engine compartment can damage components and lead to a safety risk. There is risk of accidents or risk of property damage. ◀

#### WARNING

The engine compartment accommodates moving components. Certain components can move in the engine compartment with the vehicle switched off, e.g. the cooler fan. There is risk of injuries. Do not reach into the area of moving parts. Keep articles of clothing and hair away from moving parts. ◀

#### CAUTION

Folded-away wipers can be jammed when the hood is opened. There is risk of property damage. Make sure that the wipers with the wiper blades mounted are folded down onto the windshield before opening the hood. ◀

#### WARNING

There are protruding parts, e.g. lock hook, on the inside of the hood. There is risk of injuries. If the hood is open, pay attention to protruding parts and keep these areas clear. ◀

#### WARNING

An incorrectly locked hood can open while driving and restrict visibility. There is risk of an accident. Stop immediately and correctly close the hood. ◀

#### WARNING

Body parts can be jammed on opening and closing the hood. There is risk of injuries. Make sure that the area of movement of the hood is clear during opening and closing. ◀

### Opening the hood

1. Pull lever, arrow 1.  
Hood is unlocked.



2. After the lever is released, pull the lever again, arrow 2.  
Hood can be opened.

### Indicator/warning lights

When the hood is opened, a Check Control message is displayed.

### Closing the hood



Let the hood fall from approx. 16 in/40 cm, arrow.

The hood must audibly engage on both sides.

# ENGINE OIL

## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## GENERAL INFORMATION

The engine oil consumption is dependent on the driving style and driving conditions.

The engine oil consumption can increase in the following situations, for example:

- ▶ Sporty driving style.
- ▶ Break-in of the engine.
- ▶ Idling of the engine.
- ▶ With use of engine oil types that are not approved.

Therefore, regularly check the engine oil level after refueling.

The vehicle is equipped with electronic oil measurement.

The electronic oil measurement has two measuring principles:

- ▶ Status display.
- ▶ Detailed measurement.

## ELECTRONIC OIL MEASUREMENT

### Status display

#### The concept

The engine oil level is monitored electronically while driving and shown on the Control Display.

If the engine oil level reaches the minimum level, a check control message is displayed.



#### Requirements

A current measured value is available after approx. 30 minutes of driving. During a shorter trip, the status of the last, sufficiently long trip is displayed.

With frequent short-distance trips, perform a detailed measurement.

### Displaying the engine oil level

On the Control Display:

1.  "Vehicle info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3.  "Engine oil level"

### Engine oil level display messages

Different messages appear on the display depending on the engine oil level. Pay attention to these messages.

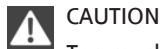
If the engine oil level is too low within the next 125 miles/200 km, add engine oil, refer to page 196.



#### CAUTION

A too low engine oil level causes engine damage. There is risk of property damage. Immediately add engine oil. ◀

Take care not to add too much engine oil.

**CAUTION**

Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. There is risk of property damage. Do not add too much engine oil. Have too much engine oil siphoned off by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. ◀

**Detailed measurement****The concept**

In the detailed measurement the engine oil level is checked and displayed via a scale.

If the engine oil level reaches the minimum level, a check control message is displayed.



During the measurement, the idle speed is increased somewhat.

**Requirements**

- ▷ Vehicle is on level road.
- ▷ Manual transmission: shift lever in neutral position, clutch and accelerator pedals not depressed.
- ▷ Steptronic transmission: selector lever in selector lever position N or P and accelerator pedal not depressed.
- ▷ Engine is running and is at operating temperature.

**Performing a detailed measurement**

On the Control Display:

1.  "Vehicle info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3.  "Measure engine oil level"
4. "Start measurement"

The engine oil level is checked and displayed via a scale.

Time: approx. 1 minute.

**ADDING ENGINE OIL****Information****CAUTION**

A too low engine oil level causes engine damage. There is risk of property damage.

Add engine oil within the next 125 miles/200 km. ◀

**CAUTION**

Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. There is risk of property damage. Do not add too much engine oil. Have too much engine oil siphoned off by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. ◀

**WARNING**

Operating materials, e.g. oils, greases, coolants, fuels, can contain harmful ingredients. There is risk of injuries or danger to life. Observe the instructions on the containers. Avoid the contact of articles of clothing, skin or eyes with operating materials. Do not refill operating materials into different bottles. Store operating materials out of reach of children. ◀

**General information**

Only add engine oil when the message is displayed in the instrument cluster. The quantity to be added is indicated in the message displayed in the instrument cluster.

Switch off the ignition and safely park the vehicle before engine oil is added.

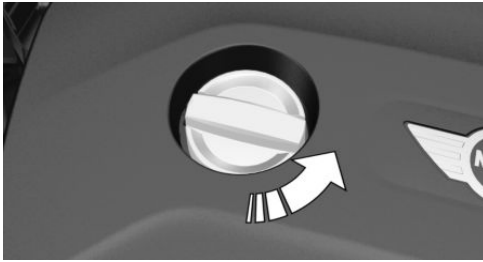
**Overview**

The oil filler neck is located in the engine compartment, refer to page 193.

**Opening the oil filler neck**

1. Open the hood, refer to page 194.

- Turn the oil filler neck counter-clockwise, arrow.



- Add motor oil.

After refilling, perform a detailed measurement, refer to page 196.

## ENGINE OIL TYPES TO ADD

### Information

**CAUTION**  
Oil additives can damage the engine. There is risk of property damage. Do not use oil additives. ◀

**CAUTION**  
Incorrect engine oil can cause malfunctions in the engine or damage it. There is risk of property damage. When selecting an engine oil, make sure that the engine oil has the correct viscosity grade. ◀

The engine oil quality is critical for the life of the engine.

### Viscosity grades

When selecting an engine oil, ensure that the engine oil belongs to one of the viscosity grades SAE 0W-40, SAE 0W-30, SAE 5W-40, SAE 5W-30, 0W-20 or 5W-20.

### Suitable engine oil types

Add engine oils that meet the following oil rating standards:

#### Gasoline engine

BMW Longlife-01.

BMW Longlife-01 FE.

BMW Longlife-14 FE+.

More information about suitable engine oil ratings and viscosities of engine oils can be requested from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

### Alternative engine oil types

If an engine oil suitable for continuous use is not available, up to 1 US quart/liter of an engine oil with the following oil rating can be added:

#### Gasoline engine

API SL or superior oil rating

## ENGINE OIL CHANGE

**CAUTION**  
Engine oil that is not changed in timely fashion can cause increased engine wear and thus engine damage. There is risk of property damage. Do not exceed the service data indicated in the vehicle. ◀

The vehicle manufacturer recommends that you let the dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop change the motor oil.

MINI recommends  
**MINI Original Engine Oil.**

# COOLANT

## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## INFORMATION



### WARNING

With the engine hot and the cooling system open, coolant can escape and lead to burns. There is risk of injuries. Only open the cooling system with the engine cooled down. ◀



### WARNING

Additives are harmful and incorrect additives can damage the engine. There is risk of injuries and risk of property damage. Avoid the contact of articles of clothing, skin or eyes with additives. Do not swallow any additives. Use suitable additives only. ◀

Coolant consists of water and additives.

Not all commercially available additives are suitable for the vehicle. Information about suitable additives is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

## COOLANT LEVEL

### Overview

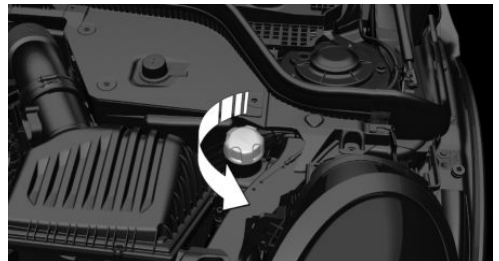
Opening the hood, refer to page [194](#)

The coolant reservoir is in the engine compartment, refer to page [193](#).

### Checking

There are yellow Min and Max marks in the coolant reservoir.

1. Let the engine cool.
2. Turn the lid of the coolant reservoir slightly counterclockwise to allow any excess pressure to dissipate, then open it.

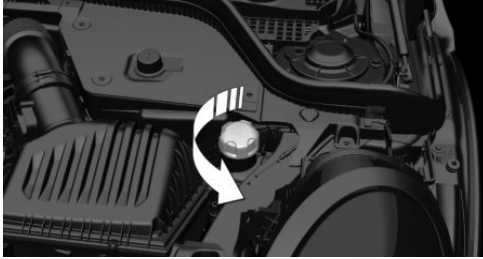


3. The coolant level is correct if it lies between the minimum and maximum marks in the filler neck.



## Adding

1. Let the engine cool.
2. Turn the lid of the coolant reservoir slightly counterclockwise to allow any excess pressure to dissipate, then open it.



3. If the coolant is low, slowly add coolant up to the specified level; do not overfill.
4. Close cap.
5. Have the cause of the coolant loss eliminated as soon as possible.

## DISPOSAL



Comply with the relevant environmental protection regulations when disposing of coolant and coolant additives.

# MAINTENANCE

## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## MINI MAINTENANCE SYSTEM

The maintenance system indicates required maintenance measures, and thereby provides support in maintaining road safety and the operational reliability of the vehicle.

In some cases scopes and intervals may vary according to the country-specific version. Replacement work, spare parts, fuels and lubricants and wear materials are calculated separately. Further information is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

## CONDITION BASED SERVICE CBS

Sensors and special algorithms take into account the driving conditions of your vehicle. Based on this, Condition Based Service recognizes the maintenance requirements.

The system makes it possible to adapt the amount of maintenance corresponding to your user profile.

Detailed information on service requirements, refer to page 81, can be displayed on the Control Display.

### Service data in the remote control

Information on the required maintenance is continuously stored in the remote control. The dealer's service center can read this data out and suggest an optimized maintenance scope for your vehicle.

Therefore, hand the service advisor the remote control with which the vehicle was driven most recently.

### Storage periods

Storage periods during which the vehicle battery was disconnected are not taken into account.

If this occurs, have a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop update the time-dependent maintenance procedures, such as checking brake fluid and, if necessary, changing the engine oil and the microfilter/activated-charcoal filter.

## SERVICE AND WARRANTY INFORMATION BOOKLET FOR US MODELS AND WARRANTY AND SERVICE GUIDE BOOKLET FOR CANADIAN MODELS

Please consult your Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models for additional information on service requirements.

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that maintenance and repair be performed by a dealer's service center or another qualified



service center or repair shop. Records of regular maintenance and repair work should be retained.

## SOCKET FOR OBD ONBOARD DIAGNOSIS

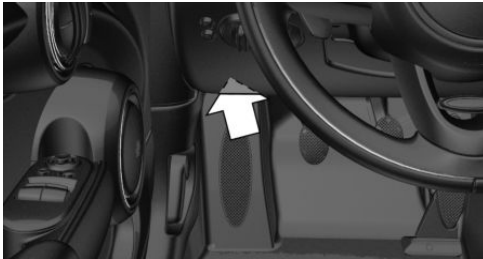
### Information



#### CAUTION

Improper use of the socket for Onboard Diagnosis can lead to vehicle malfunctions. There is risk of property damage. The manufacturer of your vehicle strongly recommends access to the socket for Onboard Diagnosis be limited to a dealer's service center, another qualified service center or repair shop or other authorized persons. ◀

### Position



There is an OBD socket on the driver's side for checking the primary components in the vehicle's emissions.

### Emissions



- ▷ The warning lamp lights up:  
Emissions are deteriorating. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.
- ▷ The warning lamp flashes under certain circumstances:  
This indicates that there is excessive misfiring in the engine.

Reduce the vehicle speed and have the system checked immediately; otherwise, serious engine misfiring within a brief period can seriously damage emission control components, in particular the catalytic converter.

# REPLACING COMPONENTS

## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## ONBOARD VEHICLE TOOL KIT



The onboard vehicle tool kit is located in the trough under the trunk floor.



The warning triangle is located in the tailgate. To remove, loosen the brackets.

## WIPER BLADE REPLACEMENT

### Information



#### CAUTION

If the wiper arm falls onto the windshield without the wiper blades installed, the windshield can be damaged. There is risk of property damage. Secure the wiper arm when replacing the wiper blades and do not fold down the wipers without the wiper blades installed. ◀

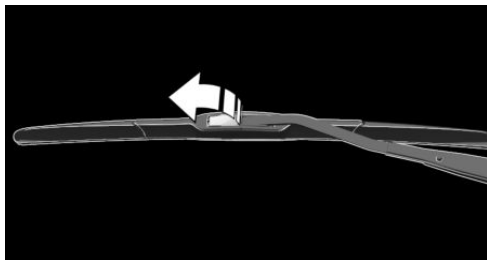


#### CAUTION

Folded-away wipers can be jammed when the hood is opened. There is risk of property damage. Make sure that the wipers with the wiper blades mounted are folded down onto the windshield before opening the hood. ◀

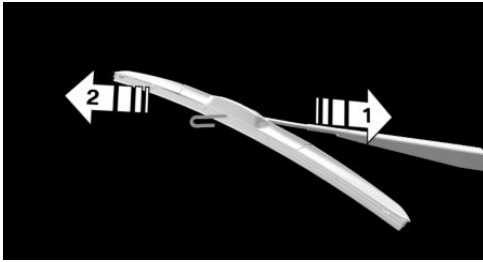
### Replacing the front wiper blades

1. Fold up and hold the wiper arm firmly.
2. Open the wiper blade lock, arrow.



3. Pull the wiper blade down first out of the holder on the wiper arm, arrow 1.

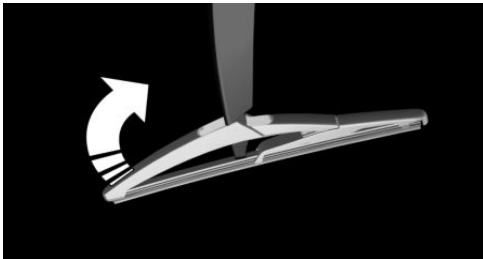
Then pull the wiper blade free from the holder of the wiper arm, arrow 2.



4. Insert and latch a new wiper blade in reverse order.
5. Fold down the wipers.

### Replace rear wiper blade

1. Fold up and hold the wiper arm firmly.
2. Turn the wiper blade all the way back.



3. Continue turning the wiper blade all the way so that it pops out of the holder.
4. Press the new wiper blade into the holder until you hear it snap into place.
5. Fold the wipers in.

## LAMP AND BULB REPLACEMENT

### General information

Lights and bulbs make an essential contribution to vehicle safety.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you have appropriate work performed by a

dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop if you are unfamiliar with it or if it has not been described here.

A spare lamp box is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

### Information

#### Lights and bulbs



#### WARNING

Bulbs can get hot during operation. Contact with the bulbs can cause burns. There is risk of injuries. Only change bulbs after they have cooled off. ◀



#### WARNING

Work on switched-on lighting systems can cause short circuits. There is risk of injuries or risk of property damage. When working on the lighting system, switch off the lamps in question. If necessary, heed the bulb manufacturer's instructions. ◀



#### CAUTION

Contaminated bulbs reduce their service life. There is risk of property damage. Do not hold new bulbs with your bare hands. Use a clean cloth or something similar, or hold the bulb by its base. ◀

#### Light-emitting diodes (LEDs)

Some items of equipment use light-emitting diodes installed behind a cover as a light source.

These light-emitting diodes, which are related to conventional lasers, are officially designated as Class 1 light-emitting diodes.



#### WARNING

Too intensive brightness can irritate or damage the retina of the eye. There is risk of injuries. Do not look directly into the headlights or other light sources for an extended period of time. Do not remove the LED covers. ◀

## Headlight glass

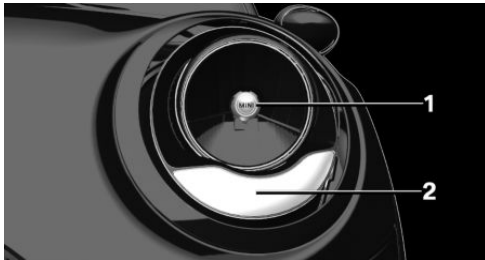
Condensation can form on the inside of the external lights in cool or humid weather. When driving with the lights switched on, the condensation evaporates after a short time. The headlight glass does not need to be changed.

If despite driving with the lights switched on, increasing humidity forms, e. g. water droplets in the lamp, the manufacturer of your vehicle recommends having it checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

## Front lights, bulb replacement

### Overview

#### Halogen headlights



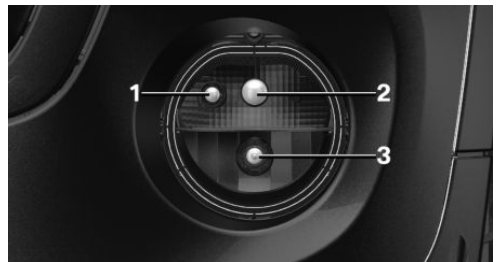
- 1 Low beams/high beams
- 2 Turn signal

#### LED headlights



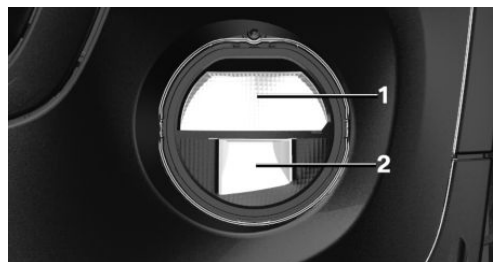
- 1 Daytime running lights
- 2 Low beams/high beams
- 3 Turn signal

#### Bug light



- 1 Parking lights
- 2 Daytime running lights
- 3 Fog lights

#### LED bug light



- 1 Parking lights
- 2 Fog lights

### LED low beams/LED high beams

Follow the general instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page 203.

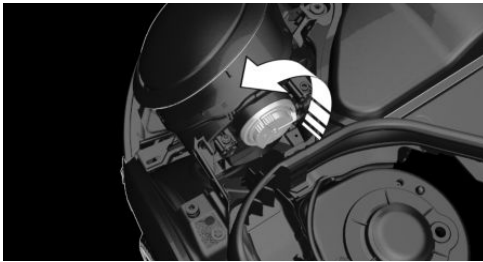
The lights feature LED technology. Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop in the event of a malfunction.

### Halogen low beams/halogen high beams

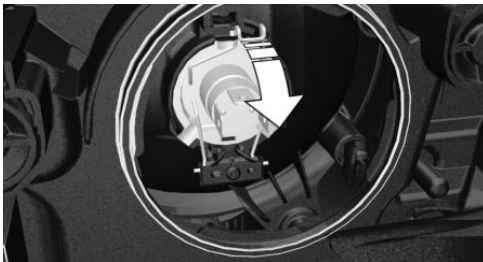
Follow the general instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page 203.

Bulbs: H4

1. Open the hood, refer to page 194.
2. Turn the lid counterclockwise, arrow, and remove.



3. Pull off the connector.
4. Unclip spring clip, arrow, and fold down.



5. Remove the bulb from the headlight housing.
6. Insert the new bulb and install the cover in the reverse order.

### Turn signal

Follow the general instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page 203.

Bulbs: PW24W

With white turn signal lights: PWY24W

1. Turn the steering wheel.
2. Turn the lid counterclockwise, arrow 1, and remove.



3. Unscrew the inner lid counterclockwise, and remove it.



4. Pull bulb holder out of the bulb housing; if needed, loosen it with small tilting movements if possible.



5. Pull the bulb out of the fixture.
6. Insert the new bulb and install the cover in the reverse order.

### LED parking lights/LED fog lights

Follow the general instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page 203.

The lights feature LED technology. Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop in the event of a malfunction.

### Parking lights/fog lights/daytime running lights

Follow the general instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page 203.

Bulbs:

- ▷ Parking lights for halogen headlights: W5W
- Parking lights for LED headlights: W5W NBV
- ▷ Daytime running light: PSX24W
- ▷ Fog lamp: H8

### Replacing the bulbs

1. Turn the steering wheel.
2. Turn the lid counterclockwise, arrow 2, and remove.

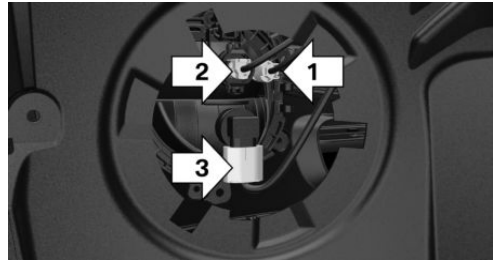


3. Remove the corresponding connector.
4. Remove the bulb holder.
  - ▷ Turn the parking light bulb holder counter-clockwise, arrow 1, and remove.
  - ▷ Press together the upper and lower locking of the daytime running lights

bulb holder, arrow 2, and remove the bulb holder.

For better accessibility, if needed, remove the bulb of the fog lamp beforehand.

- ▷ Turn the fog light bulb holder counter-clockwise, arrow 3, and remove.



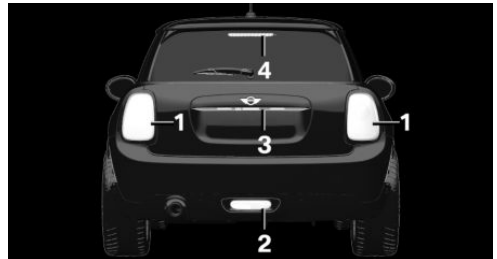
5. Pull the bulb out of the fixture.
6. Insert the new bulb and install the cover in the reverse order.

The daytime running lights bulb holder engages audibly, first below, then above.

### Tail lights, bulb replacement

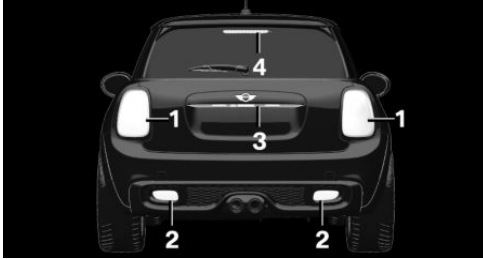
#### Overview

#### Vehicles with a rear fog lamp



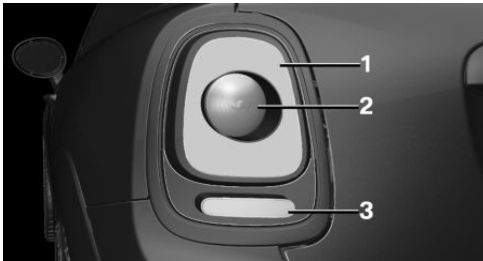
- 1 Side tail lights
- 2 Rear fog lamp
- 3 License plate lamp
- 4 Center brake lamp

### Vehicle with two rear fog lights



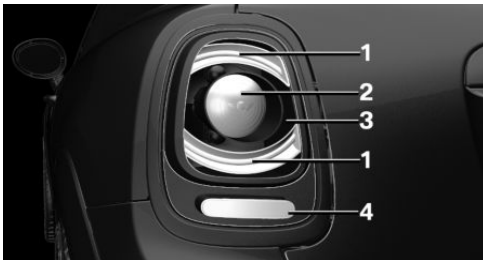
- 1 Side tail lights
- 2 Rear fog lights
- 3 License plate lamp
- 4 Center brake lamp

### Side tail lights



- 1 Brake lights/tail lights
- 2 Turn signal
- 3 Reversing lights

### Side LED tail lights



- 1 Tail lights
- 2 Turn signal

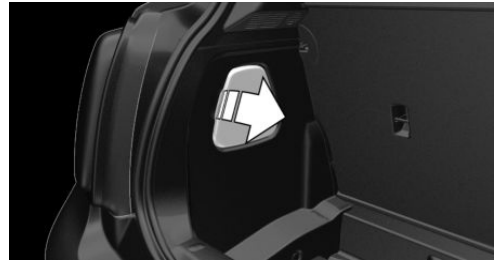
- 3 Brake light
- 4 Reversing lights

### Side tail lights

Follow the general instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page 203.

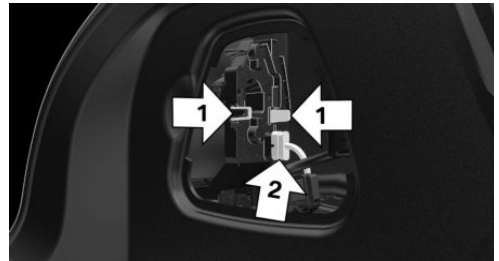
Bulbs: P21W

1. Open tailgate, refer to page 40.
2. Remove left or right cover.



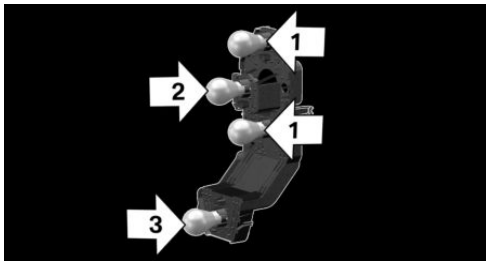
3. Through the opening, loosen the plug connector, arrow 2 on the bulb holder.

Press the latches together, arrows 1, and remove the bulb holder.



4. Remove the bulb holder from the opening.
5. Press the nonworking bulb gently into the socket, turn counterclockwise and remove.
  - ▷ Arrow 1: brake lights/tail lights
  - ▷ Arrow 2: turn signal

- ▷ Arrow 3: reversing light



6. Proceed in the reverse order to insert the new bulb and attach the bulb holder. Make sure that the bulb holder engages in all fasteners.

### Central brake lamp and license plate lamp

Follow the general instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page 203.

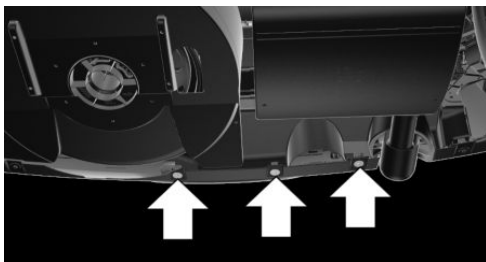
The lights feature LED technology. Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop in the event of a malfunction.

### Vehicles with a rear fog lamp

Follow the general instructions on Lights and bulbs, refer to page 203.

Bulbs: W16W

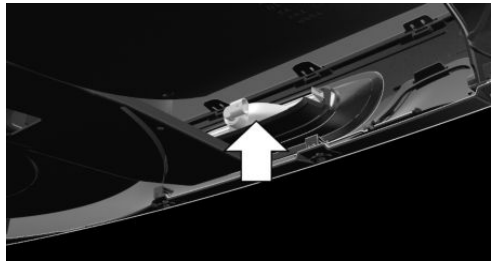
1. On vehicles with heat shield:  
Loosen 3 screws, arrow.



2. Push the heat shield forward and the bumper back in order to be able to reach the fog lamp.

3. Turn the bulb socket counterclockwise and remove.

The wire is long enough to guide the socket down and through between any heat shield that may be installed and the bumper.



4. Replace nonworking bulb.  
5. To install the new bulb, proceed in reverse order of removal.

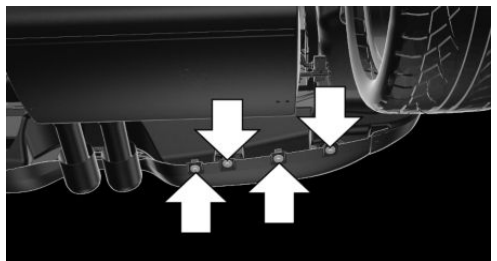
### Vehicle with two rear fog lights

Follow the general instructions on Lights and bulbs, refer to page 203.

Bulbs: W16W

Left rear fog lamp:

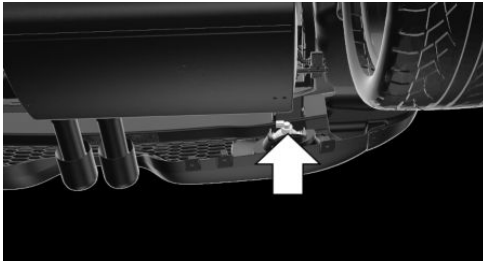
1. On vehicles with heat shield:  
Loosen 3 screws, arrow.



2. Push the heat shield forward and the bumper back in order to be able to reach the fog lamp.  
3. Turn the bulb socket counterclockwise and remove.



The wire is long enough to guide the socket down and through between any heat shield that may be installed and the bumper.

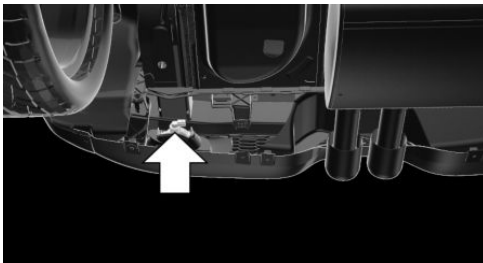


4. Replace nonworking bulb.
5. To install the new bulb, proceed in reverse order of removal.

Right fog lamp:

1. Turn the bulb socket counterclockwise and remove.

The wire is long enough to guide the socket down and through between any heat shield that may be installed and the bumper.



2. Replace nonworking bulb.
3. To install the new bulb, proceed in reverse order of removal.

### Side turn signal, bulb replacement

Follow the general instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page [203](#).

Bulbs:

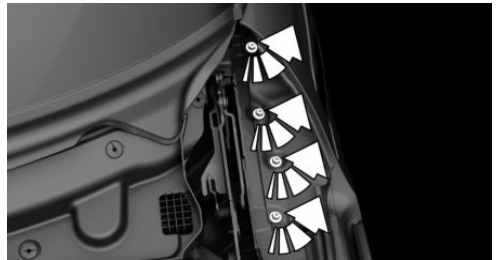
- ▷ With orange lens: W5W

- ▷ With white lens: WY5W diadem

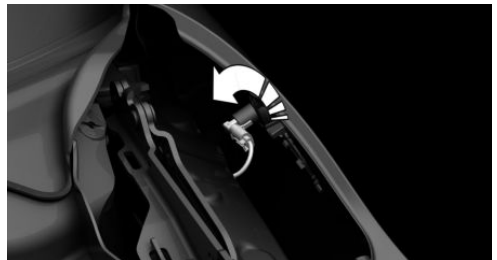
1. Open the hood. The covers of the side turn signal lights are on the left and right next to the hinges of the hood.



2. Loosen nuts of the cover by hand and remove the cover.



3. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove.



4. Replace the bulb.
5. To insert the new bulb, proceed in reverse order of removal. Insert the nuts of the cover and press down.

## CHANGING WHEELS

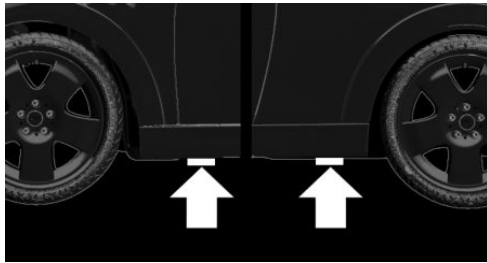
### Information

When using run-flat tires or tire sealants, a tire does not need to be changed immediately in the event of pressure loss due to a flat tire.

Which is why no spare tire is available.

The tools for changing wheels are available as accessories from your dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

### Jacking points for the vehicle jack



The jacking points for the vehicle jack are located at the positions shown.

### Emergency wheel

#### Safety measures

- ▷ Park the vehicle as far away as possible from passing traffic and on solid ground. Switch on the hazard warning system.
- ▷ Set the parking brake and engage lever in position P P.
- ▷ Have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and ensure that they remain outside the immediate area in a safe place, such as behind a guardrail.
- ▷ If necessary, set up a warning triangle or portable hazard warning lamp at an appropriate distance.
- ▷ Perform wheel change only on a flat, solid and slip-resistant surface. On soft or slippery ground, e.g., snow, ice, tiles, etc., the

vehicle or vehicle jack can slip away to the side.

- ▷ Do not place wood blocks or similar items under the vehicle jack; otherwise, it cannot reach its carrying capacity because of the restricted height.
- ▷ If the vehicle is raised, do not lie under the vehicle and do not start the engine; otherwise, a fatal hazard exists.

### Information



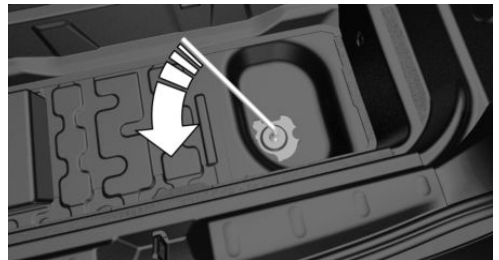
#### WARNING

The vehicle jack is optimized for lifting the vehicle and for the jacking points on the vehicle only. There is risk of injuries. Do not lift any other vehicle or cargo using the vehicle jack. ◀

### Removing the emergency wheel

The emergency wheel is housed in a well on the underbody of the vehicle. The screw connection of the emergency wheel is in the cargo area underneath the floor mat, on the floor of the storage compartment for the onboard vehicle tool kit.

1. Loosen the nut using the wheel wrench from the onboard vehicle tool kit.

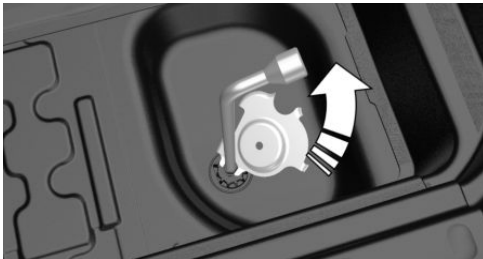


2. Remove the retaining plate.

3. Screw wheel lug wrench onto the thread and hold in place with one hand.



4. Unlock the locking hexagon of the emergency wheel well using the hexagon attached to retaining plate.



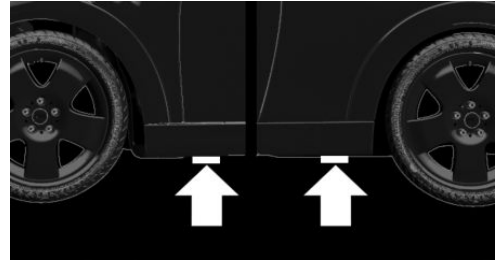
5. Lower the emergency wheel with the wheel wrench.
6. Unscrewing the wheel wrench
7. Pull out the well with emergency wheel under the vehicle toward the rear.
8. Remove the spacer and emergency wheel from the well.
9. Stow the well and spacer in the vehicle.

### Prepare wheel change

1. Follow the Safety instructions, refer to page 210.
2. With the wheel chock from the onboard vehicle tool kit, also secure the vehicle against rolling away at the front wheel of the opposite side. For this, place the wheel chock behind the front wheel diagonally across.
3. Loosen the wheel lug bolts a half turn.

### Jacking up the vehicle

1. Place the vehicle jack at the jacking point closest to the wheel such that the vehicle jack foot is vertically beneath the vehicle jacking point with the entire surface on the ground.



2. Insert the vehicle jack head in the rectangular recess of the jacking point for cranking it up.
3. Crank it up until the wheel in question lifts off of the ground.

### Wheel mounting

Mount one emergency wheel only.

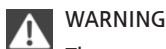
1. Unscrew the wheel lug bolts and remove the wheel.
2. Put the new wheel or emergency wheel on and screw in at least two bolts.  
If original MINI light alloy wheels are not mounted, any accompanying lug bolts also have to be used.
3. Screw in the remaining the lug bolts and tighten all bolts well in a crosswise pattern.
4. Lower the vehicle and remove the vehicle jack.

### After the wheel change

1. Tighten the lug bolts crosswise. The tightening torque is 101 lb ft/140 Nm.
2. Stow the nonworking wheel in the trunk.  
The nonworking wheel cannot be stored in the emergency wheel bracket because of its size.

3. Check tire inflation pressure at the next opportunity and correct as needed.
4. Reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor, refer to page 106.  
Reinitialize the Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 103.
5. Check to make sure the lug bolts are tight with a calibrated torque wrench.

### Driving with emergency wheel



#### WARNING

The emergency wheel has particular dimensions. When driving with an emergency wheel, changed driving properties may occur at higher speeds, e.g. reduced lane stability when braking, longer braking distance and changed self-steering properties in the limit area. There is risk of an accident. Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h. ◀

### After the trip with emergency wheel

Have the following work performed by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

1. Replace the damaged tires as soon as possible.
2. Replace the emergency wheel with a new wheel.
3. Have the tray with the emergency wheel installed.

## VEHICLE BATTERY

### Maintenance

The battery is maintenance-free.

The added amount of acid is sufficient for the service life of the battery.

More information about the battery can be requested from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

### Battery replacement



#### CAUTION

Vehicle batteries that are not compatible can damage vehicle systems and impair vehicle functions. There is risk of property damage. Information on the compatible vehicle batteries is available at your dealer's service center. ◀

After a battery replacement, the manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that the vehicle battery be registered on the vehicle by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop to ensure that all comfort features are fully available and that any Check Control messages of these comfort features are no longer displayed.

### Charging the battery

#### General information

Make sure that the battery is always sufficiently charged to guarantee that the battery remains usable for its full service life.

The battery may need to be charged in the following cases:

- ▷ When making frequent short-distance drives.
- ▷ If the vehicle is not used for prolonged periods, longer than a month.
- ▷ Steptronic transmission: when parked for long periods of time in selector lever position D, R or N.

### Information



#### CAUTION

Battery chargers for the vehicle battery can work with high voltages and currents, which means that the 12V on-board network can be overloaded or damaged. There is risk of property damage. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the starting aid terminals in the engine compartment. ◀

## Starting aid terminals

In the vehicle, only charge the battery via the starting aid terminals, refer to page 215, in the engine compartment with the engine off.

## Power failure

After a temporary power loss, some equipment needs to be newly initialized or individual settings updated, e. g.:

- ▷ Time: update.
- ▷ Date: update.
- ▷ Navigation system: wait for the operability of the navigation.
- ▷ Seat and mirror memory: store the positions again.
- ▷ Glass sunroof: initialize the system, refer to page 48.

## Disposing of old batteries



Have old batteries disposed of by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop or take them to a collection point.

Maintain the battery in an upright position for transport and storage. Secure the battery so that it does not tip over during transport.

# FUSES

## Information



### WARNING

Incorrect and repaired fuses can overload electrical lines and components. There is risk of fire. Never attempt to repair a blown fuse and do not replace a nonworking fuse with a substitute of another color or amperage rating. ◀

## Replacing fuse

The fuses are located in the passenger footwell under the dashboard.

1. To open, loosen screws, arrow 1.



2. Fold down the fuse holder, arrow 2.  
Information on the fuse types and locations is found on a separate sheet.
3. Replace the fuse in question.
4. The installation is done in reverse order from the removal.

# BREAKDOWN ASSISTANCE

## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## HAZARD WARNING FLASHERS



The button is located above the Control Display.

## WARNING TRIANGLE



The warning triangle is located in the tailgate. To remove, loosen the brackets.

## FIRST-AID KIT

The first-aid kit is located in the trunk. Some of the articles have a limited service life. Check the expiration dates of the contents regularly and replace any expired items promptly.

## JUMP-STARTING

### General information

If the battery is discharged, the engine can be started using the battery of another vehicle and two jumper cables. Only use jumper cables with fully insulated clamp handles.

### Information



**DANGER**

Contact with live components can lead to an electric shock. There is risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not touch any components that are under voltage. ◀

To prevent personal injury or damage to both vehicles, adhere strictly to the following procedure.

## Preparation

### CAUTION

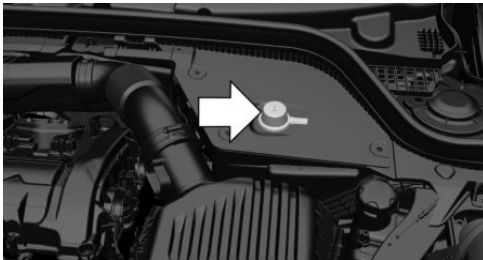
In the case of body contact between the two vehicles, a short circuit can occur during jump-starting. There is risk of property damage. Make sure that no body contact occurs. ◀

1. Check whether the battery of the other vehicle has a voltage of 12 volts. This information can be found on the battery.
2. Switch off the engine of the assisting vehicle.
3. Switch off any electronic systems/power consumers in both vehicles.

## Starting aid terminals

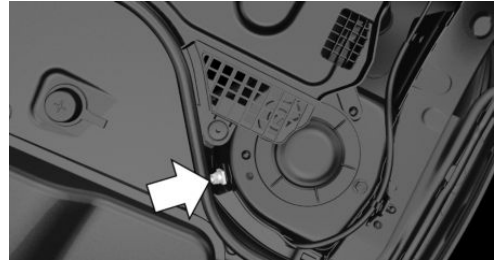
### WARNING

If the jumper cables are connected in the incorrect order, sparks formation can occur. There is risk of injuries. Pay attention to the correct order during connection. ◀



The so-called starting aid terminal in the engine compartment acts as the battery's positive terminal.

Open the lid of the starting aid terminal.



The body ground acts as the negative terminal of the battery.

## Connecting the cables

1. Pull off the lid of the starting aid terminal.
2. Attach one terminal clamp of the positive jumper cable to the positive terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding starting aid terminal of the vehicle providing assistance.
3. Attach the terminal clamp on the other end of the cable to the positive terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding starting aid terminal of the vehicle to be started.
4. Attach one terminal clamp of the negative jumper cable to the negative terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding engine or body ground of assisting vehicle.
5. Attach the second terminal clamp to the negative terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding engine or body ground of the vehicle to be started.

## Starting the engine

Never use spray fluids to start the engine.

1. Start the engine of the assisting vehicle and let it run for several minutes at an increased idle speed.
2. Start the engine of the vehicle that is to be started in the usual way.

If the first starting attempt is not successful, wait a few minutes before making another attempt in order to allow the discharged battery to recharge.

3. Let both engines run for several minutes.
4. Disconnect the jumper cables in the reverse order.

Check the battery and recharge if needed.

## TOW-STARTING AND TOWING

### Information

#### WARNING

Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated, e.g. approach control warning with light braking function. There is risk of an accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing. ◀

Switching off Intelligent Safety systems, refer to page 108.

### Steptronic transmission: transporting your vehicle

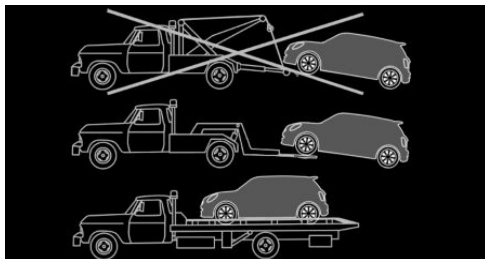
#### Information

Your vehicle must not be towed if the front wheels are touching the ground.

#### CAUTION

The vehicle can be damaged when towing the vehicle with a lifted rear axle. There is risk of property damage. Have vehicle transported only with lifted front axle or on a loading platform. ◀

### Tow truck



Have your vehicle transported with a tow truck with a so-called lift bar or on a flat bed.

#### CAUTION

When lifting the vehicle by the tow fitting or body and chassis parts; damage can occur on vehicle parts. There is risk of property damage. Lift vehicle using suitable means. ◀

Use tow fitting located in the front only for positioning the vehicle.

### Manual transmission

#### Observe before towing your vehicle

Gearshift lever in neutral position.

#### Towing

#### CAUTION

If manual unlocking of the parking brake is not possible, the vehicle cannot be moved or towed. There is risk of property damage. The vehicle should only be transported on a loading platform. ◀

Information the following instructions:

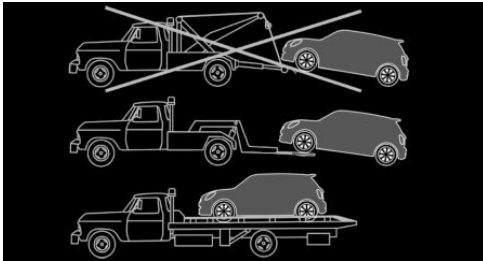
- ▷ Make sure that the ignition is switched on; otherwise, the low beams, tail lights, turn signals, and wipers may be unavailable.
- ▷ Do not tow the vehicle with the rear axle tilted, as the front wheels could turn.
- ▷ When the engine is stopped, there is no power assist. Consequently, more force



needs to be applied when braking and steering.

- ▷ Larger steering wheel movements are required.
- ▷ The towing vehicle must not be lighter than the vehicle being towed; otherwise, it will not be possible to control the vehicle's response.
- ▷ Do not exceed a towing speed of 30 mph/50 km/h.
- ▷ Do not exceed a towing distance of 30 miles/50 km.

### Tow truck



Have your vehicle transported with a tow truck with a so-called lift bar or on a flat bed.



#### CAUTION

When lifting the vehicle by the tow fitting or body and chassis parts; damage can occur on vehicle parts. There is risk of property damage. Lift vehicle using suitable means. ◀

### Towing other vehicles

#### Information



#### WARNING

If the approved gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is lighter than the vehicle to be towed, the tow fitting can tear off or it will not be possible to control the vehicle's response. There is risk of an accident! Make sure that the gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is heavier than the vehicle to be towed. ◀



#### CAUTION

If the tow bar or tow rope is attached incorrectly, damage to other vehicle parts can occur. There is risk of property damage. Correctly attach the tow bar or tow rope to the tow fitting. ◀

- ▷ Switch on the hazard warning system, depending on local regulations.
- ▷ If the electrical system has failed, clearly identify the vehicle being towed by placing a sign or a warning triangle in the rear window.

### Tow bar

The tow fittings used should be on the same side on both vehicles.

Should it prove impossible to avoid mounting the tow bar at an offset angle, please observe the following:

- ▷ Maneuvering capability is limited going around corners.
- ▷ The tow bar will generate lateral forces if it is secured with an offset.

### Tow rope

When starting to tow the vehicle, make sure that the tow rope is taut.

To avoid jerking and the associated stresses on the vehicle components when towing, always use nylon ropes or nylon straps.



#### CAUTION

If the tow bar or tow rope is attached incorrectly, damage to other vehicle parts can occur. There is risk of property damage. Correctly attach the tow bar or tow rope to the tow fitting. ◀

## Tow fitting

### General information



The screw-in tow fitting should always be carried in the vehicle.

The tow fitting can be screwed in at the front or rear of the MINI.

The tow fitting and the onboard vehicle tool kit, refer to page 202, are together in the cargo area.

### Information



#### CAUTION

If the tow fitting is not used as intended, there can be damage to the vehicle or to the tow fitting. There is risk of property damage. Observe the notes on using the tow fitting. ◀

Use of the tow fitting:

- ▶ Use only the tow fitting provided with the vehicle and screw it all the way in.
- ▶ Use the tow fitting for towing on paved roads only.
- ▶ Use tow fitting located in the front only for positioning the vehicle.
- ▶ Avoid lateral loading of the tow fitting, e.g., do not lift the vehicle by the tow fitting.

## Screw thread for tow fitting



COOPER/COOPER D  
ONE/ONE D



COOPER S/COOPER SD



JOHN COOPER WORKS

Threaded holes for the tow fitting are located in the front and rear of the vehicle on the right side with respect to the direction of travel.

Push out the cover by pressing on the top edge.

## Tow-starting

### Steptronic transmission

Do not tow-start the vehicle.

Tow-starting the engine is not possible due to the Steptronic transmission.

Have the cause of the starting problems fixed.

### Manual transmission

If possible, do not tow-start the vehicle but start the engine by jump-starting, refer to page 214. If the vehicle is equipped with a catalytic converter, only tow-start while the engine is cold.

1. Switch on the hazard warning system and comply with local regulations.
2. Ignition, refer to page 62, on.
3. Engage third gear.
4. Have the vehicle tow-started with the clutch pedal pressed and slowly release the pedal. After the engine starts, immediately press on the clutch pedal again.
5. Stop at a suitable location, remove the tow bar or rope, and switch off the hazard warning system.
6. Have the vehicle checked.

# CARE

## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## CAR WASHES

### General information

Regularly remove foreign objects such as leaves in the area below the windshield when the hood is raised.

Wash your vehicle frequently, particularly in winter. Intense soiling and road salt can damage the vehicle.

### Steam jets or high-pressure washers

#### Information



#### CAUTION

When cleaning with high-pressure washers, components can be damaged due to the pressure or temperatures being too high. There is risk of property damage. Maintain sufficient distance and do not spray too long continuously. Follow the user's manual for the high-pressure washer. ◀

### Distances and temperature

- ▷ Maximum temperature: 140 °F/60 °C.
- ▷ Minimum distance from sensors, cameras, seals: 12 in/30 cm.

- ▷ Minimum distance from glass sunroof: 31.5 inches/80 cm.

### Automatic car washes

#### Information

- ▷ Give preference to cloth car washes or those that use soft brushes in order to avoid paint damage.
- ▷ Make sure that the wheels and tires are not damaged by the transport mechanisms.
- ▷ Fold in the exterior mirrors; otherwise, they may be damaged, depending on the width of the vehicle.
- ▷ Unscrew the rod antenna.
- ▷ Deactivate the rain sensor, refer to page 69, to avoid unintentional wiper activation.
- ▷ In some cases, an unintentional alarm can be triggered by the interior motion sensor of the alarm system. Follow the instructions on avoiding an unintentional alarm, refer to page 44.



#### CAUTION

Too high guide rails in car washes can damage body parts. There is risk of property damage. Avoid car washes with guide rails higher than 4 in/10 cm. ◀

### Before driving into a car wash

In order to ensure that the vehicle can roll in a car wash, take the following steps:

Manual transmission:

1. Drive into the car wash.
2. Shift to neutral.
3. Switch the engine off.
4. Switch on the ignition.

Steptronic transmission:

1. Drive into the car wash.
2. Engage selector lever position N.
3. Make sure that the parking brake is released.
4. Press the Start/Stop button to switch off the engine.

In this way, the ignition remains switched on, and two Check-Control messages are displayed.

A signal sounds when you leave the vehicle while in selector lever position N.

The vehicle cannot be locked from the outside when in selector lever position N. A signal is sounded when an attempt is made to lock the vehicle.

To start the engine with manual transmission:

1. Press on the clutch pedal.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

To start the engine with Steptronic transmission:

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

## Headlights

- ▶ Do not rub dry and do not use abrasive or acidic cleansers.
- ▶ Soak areas that have been dirtied e. g., from insects, with shampoo and wash off with water.
- ▶ Thaw ice with de-icing spray; do not use an ice scraper.

## After washing the vehicle

After washing the vehicle, apply the brakes briefly to dry them; otherwise, braking action can be reduced and corrosion of the brake discs can occur.

Completely remove all residues on the windows, to minimize loss of visibility due to

smearing and to reduce wiper noises and wiper blade wear.

## VEHICLE CARE

### Car care products

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends using care and cleaning products from MINI.



#### WARNING

Cleansers can contain substances that are dangerous and harmful to your health. There is risk of injuries. When cleaning the interior, open the doors or windows. Only use products intended for cleaning vehicles. Follow the instructions on the container. ◀

### Vehicle paint

Regular care contributes to driving safety and value retention. Environmental influences in areas with elevated air pollution or natural contaminants, such as tree resin or pollen can affect the vehicle's paintwork. Tailor the frequency and extent of your car care to these influences.

Aggressive substances such as spilled fuel, oil, grease or bird droppings must be removed immediately to prevent the finish from being altered or discolored.

### Leather care

Remove dust from the leather often, using a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Otherwise, particles of dust and road grime chafe in pores and folds, and lead to increased wear and premature degradation of the leather surface.

To guard against discoloration, such as from clothing, provide leather care roughly every two months.

Clean light-colored leather more frequently because soiling on such surfaces is substantially more visible.

Use leather care products; otherwise, dirt and grease will gradually break down the protective layer of the leather surface.

Suitable care products are available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

### Upholstery material care

Vacuum regularly with a vacuum cleaner.

If upholstery is very dirty, e.g., with beverage stains, use a soft sponge or microfiber cloth with a suitable interior cleaner.

Clean the upholstery down to the seams using large sweeping motions. Avoid rubbing the material vigorously.



#### CAUTION

Open Velcro® fasteners on articles of clothing can damage the seat covers. There is risk of property damage. Ensure that any Velcro® fasteners are closed. ◀

### Caring for special components

#### Light-alloy wheels

When cleaning the vehicle, use only neutral wheel cleaners having a pH value from 5 to 9. Do not use abrasive cleaning agents or steam jets above 140 °F/60 °C. Follow the manufacturer's instructions.

Aggressive, acidic or alkaline cleaning agents can destroy the protective layer of adjacent components, such as the brake disk.

#### Chrome surfaces

Carefully clean components such as the radiator grille or door handles with an ample supply of water, possibly with shampoo added, particularly when they have been exposed to road salt.

#### Rubber components

Environmental influences can cause surface soiling of rubber parts and a loss of gloss. For

cleaning, use only water and suitable care products, the manufacturer of your vehicle recommends original MINI care products.

Treat especially worn rubber parts with rubber care agents at regular intervals. When cleaning rubber seals, do not use any silicon-containing car care products in order to avoid damage or noises.

#### Fine wood parts

Clean fine wood facing and fine wood components only with a moist rag. Then dry with a soft cloth.

#### Plastic components

These include:

- ▷ Imitation leather surfaces.
- ▷ Roofliner.
- ▷ Lamp lenses.
- ▷ Instrument cluster cover.
- ▷ Matt black spray-coated components.
- ▷ Painted parts in the interior.

Clean with a microfiber cloth.

Dampen cloth lightly with water.

Do not soak the roofliner.



#### CAUTION

Cleansers that contain alcohol or solvents, such as lacquer thinners, heavy-duty grease removers, fuel, or such, can damage plastic parts. There is risk of property damage. Clean with a microfiber cloth. Dampen cloth lightly with water. ◀

#### Safety belts

Dirty belt straps impede the reeling action and thus have a negative impact on safety.



#### WARNING

Chemical cleansers can destroy the safety belt webbing. Missing protective effect of the safety belts. There is risk of injuries or danger to

life. Use only a mild soapy solution for cleaning the safety belts. ◀

Use only a mild soapy solution, with the safety belts clipped into their buckles.

Do not allow the switches to retract the safety belts until they are dry.

### Carpets and floor mats

#### WARNING

Objects in the driver's floor area can limit the pedal distance or block a depressed pedal. There is risk of an accident. Stow objects in the vehicle such that they are secured and cannot enter into the driver's floor area. Use floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle and can be safely attached to the floor. Do not use loose floor mats and do not layer several floor mats. Make sure that there is sufficient clearance for the pedals. Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened again after they were removed, e.g. for cleaning. ◀

Floor mats can be removed from the car's interior for cleaning.

If the floor carpets are very dirty, clean with a microfiber cloth and water or a textile cleaner. To prevent matting of the carpet, rub back and forth in the direction of travel only.

### Sensor/camera lenses

To clean sensors and camera lenses, use a cloth moistened with a small amount of glass detergent.

### Displays/Screens/Projection lenses

#### CAUTION

Chemical cleansers, moisture or fluids of any kind can damage the surface of displays and screens. There is risk of property damage. Clean with a clean, antistatic microfiber cloth. ◀

#### CAUTION

The surface of displays can be damaged with improper cleaning. There is risk of property damage. Avoid pressure that is too high and do not use any scratching materials. ◀

Clean with a clean, antistatic microfiber cloth. For stubborn soiling on the projection lens of the Head-up Display, dampen the microfiber cloth with alcohol. Extending projection lens, refer to page 90.

### Long-term

When the vehicle is shut down for longer than three months, special measures must be taken. Further information is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.



**FIND ME.**



**AT A GLANCE**

**CONTROLS**

**DRIVING TIPS**

**MOBILITY**

**REFERENCE**

# TECHNICAL DATA

## VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not

necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

## INFORMATION

The technical data and specifications in this Owner's Manual are used as guidance values. The vehicle-specific data can deviate from this, for example, due to the selected special equipment, country version or country-specific measurement method. Detailed values can be

found in the approval documents, on labels on the vehicle or can be obtained from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

The information in the vehicle documents always has priority.

## DIMENSIONS

The dimensions can vary depending on the model version, equipment or country-specific measurement method.

The specified heights do not take into account attached parts, for example, a roof antenna,

roof racks or spoiler. The heights can deviate, for example, due to the selected special equipment, tires, load and chassis version.

### MINI 3-door

Width with mirrors	inches/mm	76.1/1,932
Width without mirrors	inches/mm	68.0/1,727
Height	inches/mm	55.7/1,414
Length		
Cooper	inches/mm	151.1/3,837
Cooper S	inches/mm	151.9/3,858
John Cooper Works	inches/mm	152.5/3,874
Wheelbase	inches/mm	98.2/2,495
Smallest turning radius diam.	ft/m	35.4/10.8

MINI 5-door		
Width with mirrors	inches/mm	76.1/1,932
Width without mirrors	inches/mm	68.0/1,727
Height	inches/mm	56.1/1,425
Length		
Cooper	inches/mm	157.4/3,998
Cooper S	inches/mm	158.0/4,013
Wheelbase	inches/mm	101.1/2,567
Smallest turning radius diam.	ft/m	36.2/11.02

## WEIGHTS

The values preceding the slash apply to vehicles with manual transmission; the values following

the slash apply to vehicles with Steptronic transmission.

MINI Cooper, 3-door		
Approved gross vehicle weight	lbs	3,455/3,520
	kg	1,567/1,597
Load	lbs	680
	kg	308
Approved front axle load	lbs	1,920/1,990
	kg	871/903
Approved rear axle load	lbs	1,665
	kg	755
Approved roof load capacity	lbs	132
	kg	60
Cargo area capacity	cu ft	8.7–34.0
	Liters	211–731

## MINI Cooper, 5-door

Approved gross vehicle weight	lbs	3,680/3,750
	kg	1,669/1,701
Load	lbs	775
	kg	352
Approved front axle load	lbs	1,995/2,065
	kg	905/937
Approved rear axle load	lbs	1,840
	kg	835
Approved roof load capacity	lbs	165
	kg	75
Cargo area capacity	cu ft	13.1–40.7
	Liters	278–941

## MINI Cooper S, 3-door

Approved gross vehicle weight	lbs	3,620/3,650
	kg	1,642/1,656
Load	lbs	775/770
	kg	352/349
Approved front axle load	lbs	2,025/2,060
	kg	919/934
Approved rear axle load	lbs	1,690
	kg	767
Approved roof load capacity	lbs	132
	kg	60
Cargo area capacity	cu ft	8.7–34.0
	Liters	211–731

## MINI Cooper S, 5-door

Approved gross vehicle weight	lbs	3,860/3,900
	kg	1,751/1,769
Load	lbs	885/885
	kg	401/401
Approved front axle load	lbs	2,085/2,125
	kg	946/964
Approved rear axle load	lbs	1,880
	kg	853
Approved roof load capacity	lbs	165
	kg	75
Cargo area capacity	cu ft	13.1–40.7
	Liters	278–941

## MINI John Cooper Works, 3-door

Approved gross vehicle weight	lbs	3,720/3,765
	kg	1,687/1,708
Load	lbs	775
	kg	352
Approved front axle load	lbs	2,065/2,105
	kg	937/955
Approved rear axle load	lbs	1,725
	kg	782
Approved roof load capacity	lbs	132
	kg	60
Cargo area capacity	cu ft	8.7–34.0
	Liters	246–963

## CAPACITIES

### MINI

Fuel tank, approx.		Fuel quality, refer to page <a href="#">176</a>
Cooper	US gal/liters	11.6/44
Cooper S, John Cooper Works	US gal/liters	11.6/44

# APPENDIX

Any updates to the Owner's Manual of the vehicle are listed here.

## ACTIVE PEDESTRIAN PROTECTION SYSTEM

Opposite to the description in this Owner's Manual, the active pedestrian protection system is only deployed at speeds between approx. 30 km/h/approx. 18 mph and 55 km/h/34 mph.











# EVERYTHING FROM A TO Z

## INDEX

### A

ABS, Antilock Brake System **115**  
 Acceleration Assistant, refer to Launch Control **74**  
 ACC, see camera-based cruise control **119**  
 Activated-charcoal filter **141**  
 Active Cruise Control, see camera-based cruise control **119**  
 Additives, oil **197**  
 Adjustments, seats/head restraints **49**  
 Adjustments, steering wheel **57**  
 After washing vehicle **221**  
 Airbags **99**  
 Airbags, indicator/warning light **100**  
 Air circulation, refer to Recirculated-air mode **140**  
 Air circulation, see Recirculated-air mode **137**  
 Air conditioner **136**  
 Air, dehumidifying, see Cooling function **137, 139**  
 Air distribution, manual **137, 140**  
 Air flow, air conditioner **137**  
 Air flow, automatic climate control **140**  
 Air pressure, tires **178**  
 Air vents, refer to Ventilation **141**  
 Alarm system **43**  
 Alarm triggering **43**  
 Alarm, unintentional **44**  
 All around the center console **16**

All around the roofliner **17**  
 All around the steering wheel **14**  
 All-season tires, see Winter tires **187**  
 Alternating-code hand-held transmitter **144**  
 Alternative oil types **197**  
 Antifreeze, washer fluid **70**  
 Antilock Brake System, ABS **115**  
 Anti-slip control, see DSC **115**  
 Approved axle load **227**  
 Arrival time **85**  
 Ash tray **147**  
 Assistance when driving off **118**  
 Assist system, see Intelligent Safety **108**  
 AUTO intensity **139**  
 Automatic car wash **220**  
 Automatic climate control **138**  
 Automatic Curb Monitor **55**  
 Automatic deactivation, Front-seat passenger airbags **101**  
 Automatic headlight control **95**  
 Automatic locking **43**  
 Automatic recirculated-air control **140**  
 Automatic transmission with Steptronic **71**  
 AUTO program, automatic climate control **139**  
 AUTO program, intensity **139**  
 Auto Start/Stop function **64**  
 Average fuel consumption **85**  
 Average speed **85**  
 Axle loads, weights **227**

### B

Backrest curvature, refer to Lumbar support **50**  
 Band-aids, see First-aid kit **214**  
 Bar for tow-starting/towing **217**  
 Battery replacement, vehicle battery **212**  
 Battery, vehicle **212**  
 Belts, safety belts **51**  
 Beverage holder, cupholder **152**  
 Bonus range, GREEN mode **167**  
 Bottle holder, see Cupholder **152**  
 Brake assistant **115**  
 Brake discs, break-in **158**  
 Brake pads, break-in **158**  
 Braking, hints **159**  
 Breakdown assistance **214**  
 Break-in **158**  
 Brightness of Control Display **88**  
 Bug light **204**  
 Bulb replacement **203**  
 Bulb replacement, front **204**  
 Bulb replacement, rear **206**  
 Bulb replacement, side **209**  
 Bulbs and lights **203**  
 Button, Start/Stop **62**  
 Bypassing, see Jump-starting **214**

### C

California Proposition 65 Warning **8**

- Camera-based cruise control [119](#)
  - Camera lenses, care [223](#)
  - Camera, rearview camera [130](#)
  - Can holder, see Cupholder [152](#)
  - Car battery [212](#)
  - Car care products [221](#)
  - Care, displays [223](#)
  - Care, vehicle [221](#)
  - Cargo area [148](#)
  - Cargo area, adapting size [153](#)
  - Cargo area, enlarging [149](#)
  - Cargo area lid [40](#)
  - Cargo area, storage compartments [153](#)
  - Cargo cover [148](#)
  - Cargo, securing [162](#)
  - Cargo straps, securing cargo [162](#)
  - Car key, see Remote control [34](#)
  - Carpet, care [223](#)
  - Car wash [220](#)
  - Catalytic converter, see Hot exhaust system [159](#)
  - CBS Condition Based Service [200](#)
  - Center armrest [152](#)
  - Center console [16](#)
  - Central instrument cluster, LED ring [88](#)
  - Central locking system [40](#)
  - Central screen, refer to Control Display [18](#)
  - Changes, technical, refer to Own Safety [7](#)
  - Changing parts [202](#)
  - Changing wheels [210](#)
  - Changing wheels/tires [186](#)
  - Chassis number, see vehicle identification number [10](#)
  - Check Control [76](#)
  - Checking the oil level electronically [195](#)
  - Children, seating position [58](#)
  - Children, transporting safely [58](#)
  - Child restraint fixing system [58](#)
  - Child restraint fixing system LATCH [60](#)
  - Child restraint fixing systems, mounting [59](#)
  - Child safety locks [61](#)
  - Child seat, mounting [59](#)
  - Child seats [58](#)
  - Chrome parts, care [222](#)
  - Chrono package, cockpit [92](#)
  - Cigarette lighter [147](#)
  - Cleaning, displays [223](#)
  - Climate control [136](#), [138](#)
  - Clock [80](#)
  - Closing/opening via door lock [39](#)
  - Closing/opening with remote control [37](#)
  - Clothes hooks [153](#)
  - Coasting [168](#)
  - Coasting with engine decoupled, coasting [168](#)
  - Coasting with idling engine [168](#)
  - Combination switch, see Turn signals [67](#)
  - Combi switch, see wiper system [68](#)
  - Comfort Access [41](#)
  - Compartments in the doors [152](#)
  - Compass [145](#)
  - Compressor [188](#)
  - Condensation on windows [140](#)
  - Condensation under the vehicle [160](#)
  - Condition Based Service CBS [200](#)
  - Configuring driving program [118](#)
  - Confirmation signal [43](#)
  - Control Display [18](#)
  - Control Display, settings [87](#)
  - Controller [19](#)
  - Control systems, driving stability [115](#)
  - Convenient opening [38](#)
  - Coolant [198](#)
  - Cooling function [137](#), [139](#)
  - Cooling, maximum [139](#)
  - Cooling system [198](#)
  - Cornering lamp [96](#)
  - Corrosion on brake discs [160](#)
  - Cosmetic mirror [147](#)
  - Courtesy lamps during unlocking [37](#)
  - Courtesy lamps with the vehicle locked [38](#)
  - Cruise control [124](#)
  - Cruise control, active [119](#)
  - Cruising range [81](#)
  - Cupholder [152](#)
  - Current fuel consumption [81](#)
- ## D
- Damage, tires [186](#)
  - Damping control, dynamic [117](#)
  - Data, technical [226](#)
  - Date [80](#)
  - Daytime running lights [96](#)
  - Defrosting, refer to defrosting the windows [137](#)
  - Defrosting, see Windows, defrosting [140](#)
  - Defrosting the windows [137](#)
  - Dehumidifying, air [137](#), [139](#)
  - Deleting personal data [24](#)
  - Deletion of personal data [24](#)
  - Destination distance [85](#)
  - Digital clock [80](#)
  - Digital compass [145](#)
  - Dimensions [226](#)
  - Dimmable exterior mirrors [56](#)
  - Dimmable interior rearview mirror [56](#)

- Direction indicator, see Turn signals [67](#)
- Display, electronic, instrument cluster [76](#)
- Display, engine temperature [85](#)
- Display lighting, see Instrument lighting [97](#)
- Displays [75](#)
- Displays, cleaning [223](#)
- Disposal, coolant [199](#)
- Disposal, vehicle battery [213](#)
- Distance control, see PDC [126](#)
- Distance to destination [85](#)
- Divided screen view, split screen [23](#)
- Door lock, see Remote control [34](#)
- Drive mode, GREEN mode [165](#)
- Drive-off assistant [118](#)
- Drive-off assistant, see DSC [115](#)
- Driving Dynamics Control [117](#)
- Driving Excitement, SPORT [86](#)
- Driving instruction, GREEN mode [167](#)
- Driving instructions, break-in [158](#)
- Driving mode [117](#)
- Driving notes, general [158](#)
- Driving stability control systems [115](#)
- Driving style analysis [169](#)
- Driving tips [158](#)
- DSC Dynamic Stability Control [115](#)
- DTC Dynamic Traction Control [116](#)
- Dynamic Damping Control [117](#)
- Dynamic Stability Control DSC [115](#)
- Dynamic Traction Control DTC [116](#)
- E**
- Electronic displays, instrument cluster [76](#)
- Electronic oil measurement [195](#)
- Electronic Stability Program ESP, see DSC [115](#)
- Emergency detection, remote control [35](#)
- Emergency release, fuel filler flap [174](#)
- Emergency start function, engine start [35](#)
- Emergency wheel, compact wheel, refer to Emergency wheel [210](#)
- Energy Control [81](#)
- Engine, automatic Start/Stop function [64](#)
- Engine, automatic switch-off [64](#)
- Engine compartment [193](#)
- Engine compartment, working in [194](#)
- Engine coolant [198](#)
- Engine idling when driving, coasting [168](#)
- Engine oil [195](#)
- Engine oil, adding [196](#)
- Engine oil additives [197](#)
- Engine oil change [197](#)
- Engine oil filler neck [196](#)
- Engine oil types, alternative [197](#)
- Engine oil types, suitable [197](#)
- Engine start during malfunction [35](#)
- Engine start, jump-starting [214](#)
- Engine start, refer to Starting the engine [63](#)
- Engine stop [63](#)
- Engine temperature, display [85](#)
- Entering a car wash [220](#)
- Equipment, interior [143](#)
- Error displays, see Check Control [76](#)
- ESP Electronic Stability Program, see DSC [115](#)
- Exchanging wheels/tires [186](#)
- Exhaust system [159](#)
- Exterior mirror, automatic dimming feature [56](#)
- Exterior mirrors [55](#)
- External start [214](#)
- External temperature display [80](#)
- External temperature warning [80](#)
- Eyes for securing cargo [162](#)
- F**
- Failure message, see Check Control [76](#)
- False alarm, refer to Unintentional alarm [44](#)
- Fan, refer to Air flow [137](#)
- Fan, see Air flow [140](#)
- Favorites buttons, onboard monitor [24](#)
- Filler neck for engine oil [196](#)
- Fine wood, care [222](#)
- First-aid kit [214](#)
- Fitting for towing, see tow fitting [218](#)
- Flat tire, changing wheels [210](#)
- Flat Tire Monitor FTM [106](#)
- Flat tire, repairing [188](#)
- Flat tire, Tire Pressure Monitor TPM [102](#)
- Flat tire, warning lamp [103](#), [106](#)
- Flooding [159](#)
- Floor carpet, care [223](#)
- Floor mats, care [223](#)
- Fogged up windows [137](#)
- Folding back rear seat backrests [149](#)

Fold-out position, windshield wipers **70**  
 Foot brake **159**  
 Front airbags **99**  
 Front-end collision warning with City Braking function **109**  
 Front fog lights **97**  
 Front-seat passenger airbags, automatic deactivation **101**  
 Front-seat passenger airbags, indicator lamp **101**  
 FTM Flat Tire Monitor **106**  
 Fuel **176**  
 Fuel consumption, see Average fuel consumption **85**  
 Fuel filler flap **174**  
 Fuel gauge **80**  
 Fuel lid **174**  
 Fuel quality **176**  
 Fuel recommendation **176**  
 Fuel, tank capacity **230**  
 Fuse **213**

## G

Garage door opener, see Universal Integrated Remote Control **143**  
 Gasoline **176**  
 Gear change, Steptronic transmission **71**  
 Gear shift indicator **82**  
 General driving notes **158**  
 Glare shield **147**  
 Glass sunroof, refer to Panoramic glass sunroof **46**  
 Glove compartment **151**  
 GREEN mode **165**  
 GREEN mode, bonus range **167**  
 GREEN mode driving style analysis **169**  
 GREEN mode indicator **165**  
 GREEN - program, driving dynamics **117**

GREEN tip **167**  
 Gross vehicle weight, approved **227**  
 Ground clearance **160**

## H

Halogen headlights **204**  
 Handbrake, refer to parking brake **66**  
 Hand-held transmitter, alternating code **144**  
 Hazard warning flashers **214**  
 Head airbag **99**  
 Headlight control, automatic **95**  
 Headlight courtesy delay feature **95**  
 Headlight flasher **67**  
 Headlight glass **204**  
 Headlights, care **221**  
 Head restraints **49**  
 Head restraints, front **53**  
 Head restraints, rear **54**  
 Head-up Display **89**  
 Head-Up Display, Shift point indicator **91**  
 Head-up Display, sport displays **91**  
 Head-up Display, standard view **90**  
 Heavy cargo, stowing **162**  
 High-beam Assistant **96**  
 High beams **67**  
 High beams/low beams, see High-beam Assistant **96**  
 Hills **160**  
 Hill start assistant, see Drive-off assistant **118**  
 Holder for beverages **152**  
 Homepage **6**  
 Hood **194**  
 Horn **14**  
 Hot exhaust system **159**  
 HUD Head-up Display **89**  
 Hydroplaning **159**

## I

Ice warning, see External temperature warning **80**  
 Icy roads, see External temperature warning **80**  
 Identification marks, tires **184**  
 Identification number, see vehicle identification number **10**  
 Ignition key, see Remote control **34**  
 Ignition off **62**  
 Ignition on **62**  
 Illuminated ring, central instrument cluster **88**  
 Indication of a flat tire **103, 106**  
 Indicator lamp, see Check Control **76**  
 Individual air distribution **137, 140**  
 Individual settings, see Personal Profile **36**  
 Inflation pressure, tires **178**  
 Inflation pressure warning, tires **106**  
 Info display, refer to On-Board computer **84**  
 Information **6**  
 Initialize, Tire Pressure Monitor TPM **103**  
 Initializing, Flat Tire Monitor FTM **106**  
 Instrument cluster **75**  
 Instrument cluster, electronic displays **76**  
 Instrument lighting **97**  
 Integrated key **34**  
 Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle **29**  
 Intelligent Safety **108**  
 Intensity, AUTO program **139**  
 Interior equipment **143**  
 Interior lights **98**

Interior lights during unlocking [37](#)  
 Interior lights with the vehicle locked [38](#)  
 Interior motion sensor [44](#)  
 Interior rearview mirror, automatic dimming feature [56](#)  
 Interior rearview mirror, compass [145](#)  
 Interior rearview mirror, manually dimmable [56](#)  
 Internet site [6](#)  
 Interval display, service requirements [81](#)  
 Interval mode [68](#)

## J

Jacking points for the vehicle jack [210](#)  
 Joystick, Steptronic transmission [71](#)  
 Jump-starting [214](#)

## K

Key/remote control [34](#)  
 Keyless Go, see Comfort Access [41](#)  
 Key Memory, see Personal Profile [36](#)  
 Kickdown, Steptronic transmission [71](#)  
 Knee airbag [100](#)

## L

Label on recommended tires [186](#)  
 Lamp replacement [203](#)  
 Lamp replacement, front [204](#)  
 Lamp replacement, rear [206](#)  
 Lamp replacement, side [209](#)  
 Language on Control Display [88](#)

Lashing eyes, securing cargo [162](#)  
 LATCH child restraint system [60](#)  
 Launch Control [74](#)  
 Leather, care [221](#)  
 LED bug light [204](#)  
 LED headlights [204](#)  
 LED ring, central instrument cluster [88](#)  
 LEDs, light-emitting diodes [203](#)  
 Letters and numbers, entering [25](#)  
 Light [94](#)  
 Light-alloy wheels, care [222](#)  
 Light-emitting diodes, LEDs [203](#)  
 Lighter [147](#)  
 Lighting [94](#)  
 Lights and bulbs [203](#)  
 Light switch [94](#)  
 Load [162](#)  
 Loading [161](#)  
 Lock, door [39](#)  
 Locking/unlocking via door lock [39](#)  
 Locking/unlocking with remote control [37](#)  
 Locking, automatic [43](#)  
 Locking, settings [42](#)  
 Lock, power window [46](#)  
 Locks, doors, and windows [61](#)  
 Low beams [94](#)  
 Low beams, automatic, see High-beam Assistant [96](#)  
 Lower back support, mechanical [50](#)  
 Luggage rack, refer to Roof-mounted luggage rack [162](#)  
 Lumbar support, mechanical [50](#)

## M

Maintenance [200](#)

Maintenance requirements [200](#)  
 Maintenance, service requirements [81](#)  
 Maintenance system, MINI [200](#)  
 Make-up mirror [147](#)  
 Malfunction displays, see Check Control [76](#)  
 Manual air distribution [137](#), [140](#)  
 Manual air flow [137](#), [140](#)  
 Manual mode, transmission [72](#)  
 Manual operation, door lock [39](#)  
 Manual operation, exterior mirrors [55](#)  
 Manual operation, fuel filler flap [174](#)  
 Manual operation, Park Distance Control PDC [128](#)  
 Manual operation, rearview camera [130](#)  
 Manual transmission [71](#)  
 Manufacturer of the MINI [7](#)  
 Marking, run-flat tires [187](#)  
 Master key, see Remote control [34](#)  
 Maximum cooling [139](#)  
 Maximum speed, display [82](#)  
 Maximum speed, winter tires [187](#)  
 Measurement, units of [88](#)  
 Medical kit [214](#)  
 Menu in instrument cluster [84](#)  
 Menus, refer to onboard monitor operating concept [20](#)  
 Messages, see Check Control [76](#)  
 Microfilter [138](#), [141](#)  
 MID - program, driving dynamics [117](#)  
 MINI Connected, refer to Integrated Owner's Manual



MINI maintenance system [200](#)  
 MINIMALISM Analyser [169](#)  
 MINIMALISM info [168](#)  
 Minimum tread, tires [185](#)  
 Mirrors [55](#)  
 Mobile communication devices in the vehicle [159](#)  
 Mobility System [188](#)  
 Mode, GREEN Mode [165](#)  
 Modifications, technical, refer to Own Safety [7](#)  
 Moisture in headlight [204](#)  
 Monitor, refer to Control Display [18](#)  
 Mounting of child restraint systems [59](#)  
 Multifunction steering wheel, buttons [14](#)  
 Multimedia, refer to Integrated Owner's Manual

## N

Navigation, refer to Integrated Owner's Manual  
 Neck restraints, front, see Head restraints [53](#)  
 Neck restraints, rear, see Head restraints [54](#)  
 New wheels and tires [186](#)  
 Nylon rope for tow-starting/towing [217](#)

## O

OBD Onboard Diagnostics [201](#)  
 Obstacle marking, rearview camera [131](#)  
 Octane rating, see Recommended fuel grade [176](#)  
 Odometer [80](#)  
 Office, refer to Integrated Owner's Manual  
 Oil [195](#)

Oil, adding [196](#)  
 Oil additives [197](#)  
 Oil change [197](#)  
 Oil change interval, service requirements [81](#)  
 Oil filler neck [196](#)  
 Oil types, alternative [197](#)  
 Oil types, suitable [197](#)  
 Old batteries, disposal [213](#)  
 On-board computer [84](#)  
 On-board computer, refer to On-board computer [84](#)  
 Onboard Diagnostics OBD [201](#)  
 Onboard monitor [18](#)  
 Onboard monitor operating concept [18](#)  
 Onboard vehicle tool kit [202](#)  
 Opening/closing via door lock [39](#)  
 Opening/closing with remote control [37](#)  
 Operating menus, onboard monitor [18](#)  
 Optional equipment, standard equipment [6](#)  
 Outside air, refer to Automatic recirculated-air control [140](#)  
 Own safety [7](#)

## P

Paint, vehicle [221](#)  
 Panoramic glass sunroof [46](#)  
 Parallel parking assistant [132](#)  
 Park Distance Control PDC [126](#)  
 Parked-car ventilation [141](#)  
 Parked vehicle, condensation [160](#)  
 Parking aid, see PDC [126](#)  
 Parking assistant [132](#)  
 Parking brake [66](#)  
 Parking lights [94](#)  
 Passenger side mirror, tilting downward [55](#)

Pathway lines, rearview camera [130](#)  
 PDC Park Distance Control [126](#)  
 Pedestrian warning with city braking function [112](#)  
 Performance Control [116](#)  
 Personal Profile [36](#)  
 Phone, refer to Integrated Owner's Manual  
 Pinch protection system, glass sunroof [47](#)  
 Pinch protection system, windows [45](#)  
 Plastic, care [222](#)  
 PostCrash [114](#)  
 Power failure [213](#)  
 Power windows [44](#)  
 Prescribed engine oil types [197](#)  
 Pressure, tire air pressure [178](#)  
 Pressure warning, tires [106](#)  
 Profile, see Personal Profile [36](#)  
 Protective function, glass sunroof [47](#)  
 Protective function, windows [45](#)  
 Push-and-turn switch, see Controller [19](#)

## R

Radiator fluid [198](#)  
 Radio-operated key, see Remote control [34](#)  
 Radio ready state [62](#)  
 Radio, refer to Integrated Owner's Manual  
 Rain sensor [68](#)  
 Rear fog lights [97](#)  
 Rear lights [206](#)  
 Rear luggage rack [163](#)  
 Rearview camera [129](#)  
 Rearview mirror [55](#)

- Rear window defroster [138](#), [140](#)
- Recirculated-air filter [141](#)
- Recirculated-air mode [137](#), [140](#)
- Recommended fuel grade [176](#)
- Recommended tire brands [186](#)
- Refueling [174](#)
- Remaining range [81](#)
- Remote control/key [34](#)
- Remote control, blocking [35](#)
- Remote control, malfunction [38](#)
- Remote control, replacing the battery [34](#)
- Remote control, universal [143](#)
- Replacement fuse [213](#)
- Replacing parts [202](#)
- Replacing the battery, remote control [34](#)
- Replacing wheels/tires [186](#)
- Reporting safety malfunctions [10](#)
- RES CNCL button, see camera-based cruise control [119](#)
- RES CNCL button, see Cruise control [124](#)
- Reserve warning, see Range [81](#)
- Reset, Tire Pressure Monitor TPM [103](#)
- Retaining straps, securing cargo [162](#)
- Retreaded tires [187](#)
- Roadside parking lights [95](#)
- RON recommended fuel grade [176](#)
- Roofliner [17](#)
- Roof load capacity [227](#)
- Roof-mounted luggage rack [162](#)
- Rope for tow-starting/towing [217](#)
- RSC Run Flat System Component, see Run-flat tires [187](#)
- Rubber components, care [222](#)
- Run-flat tires [187](#)
- ## S
- Safe braking [159](#)
- Safety belt reminder for driver's seat and front passenger seat [52](#)
- Safety belts [51](#)
- Safety belts, care [222](#)
- Safety switch, windows [46](#)
- Safety systems, airbags [99](#)
- Saving fuel [164](#)
- Screen, refer to Control Display [18](#)
- Screwdriver [202](#)
- Screw thread for tow fitting [218](#)
- Sealant [188](#)
- Seat belts, see Safety belts [51](#)
- Seat heating, front [51](#)
- Seating position for children [58](#)
- Seats [49](#)
- Selection list in instrument cluster [84](#)
- Selector lever, Steptronic transmission [71](#)
- Sensors, care [223](#)
- Service and warranty [8](#)
- Service requirements, Condition Based Service CBS [200](#)
- Service requirements, display [81](#)
- SET button, see camera-based cruise control [119](#)
- SET button, see Cruise control [124](#)
- Settings, locking/unlocking [42](#)
- Settings, mirrors [55](#)
- Settings on Control Display [87](#)
- Shift paddles on the steering wheel [73](#)
- Shift point indicator, Head-Up Display [91](#)
- Side airbag [99](#)
- Signaling, horn [14](#)
- Signals when unlocking [43](#)
- Sitting safely [49](#)
- Size [226](#)
- Slide/tilt glass roof [46](#)
- Snow chains [191](#)
- Socket [147](#)
- Socket, OBD Onboard Diagnostics [201](#)
- Spare fuse [213](#)
- Spare tire, refer to Emergency wheel [210](#)
- Speed, average [85](#)
- Speed limit detection, on-board computer [85](#)
- Speed limiter, display [82](#)
- Speed Limit Information [82](#)
- Speed warning [87](#)
- Split screen [23](#)
- Sport displays [86](#)
- Sport displays, Head-up Display [91](#)
- Sport instruments, cockpit [92](#)
- SPORT program, Dynamic Driving Control [117](#)
- Sport program, transmission [72](#)
- Stability control systems [115](#)
- Standard view, Head-up Display [90](#)
- Start/stop, automatic function [64](#)
- Start/Stop button [62](#)
- Start function during malfunction [35](#)
- Starting the engine [63](#)
- Status control display, tires [103](#)
- Status information, onboard monitor [23](#)
- Status of Owner's Manual [7](#)

Steering wheel, adjusting [57](#)  
 Steptronic Sport transmission,  
 refer to Steptronic transmis-  
 sion [71](#)  
 Steptronic transmission [71](#)  
 Stopping the engine [63](#)  
 Storage compartments [151](#)  
 Storage, tires [187](#)  
 Storing the vehicle [223](#)  
 Suitable engine oil types [197](#)  
 Summer tires, tread [185](#)  
 Sun visor [147](#)  
 Supplementary text mes-  
 sages [79](#)  
 Switch for Dynamic Driv-  
 ing [117](#)  
 Switch-on times, parked-car  
 ventilation [141](#)  
 Switch, see Cockpit [14](#)  
 Symbols [6](#)  
 Symbols in the status field [23](#)

## T

Tachometer [80](#)  
 Tailgate [40](#)  
 Tailgate via remote control [38](#)  
 Tail lights [206](#)  
 Technical changes, refer to  
 Own Safety [7](#)  
 Technical data [226](#)  
 Temperature, air condi-  
 tioner [137](#)  
 Temperature, automatic cli-  
 mate control [139](#)  
 Temperature display for exter-  
 nal temperature [80](#)  
 Temperature, engine [85](#)  
 Tempomat, see camera-based  
 cruise control [119](#)  
 Terminal, starting aid [215](#)  
 Text messages, supplemen-  
 tary [79](#)  
 Theft alarm system, see Alarm  
 system [43](#)  
 High support [50](#)

Tilt alarm sensor [44](#)  
 Time of arrival [85](#)  
 Tire damage [186](#)  
 Tire identification marks [184](#)  
 Tire inflation pressure [178](#)  
 Tire inflation pressure moni-  
 tor, refer to FTM [106](#)  
 Tire Pressure Monitor  
 TPM [102](#)  
 Tires, changing [186](#)  
 Tire sealant [188](#)  
 Tires, everything on wheels  
 and tires [178](#)  
 Tires, run-flat tires [187](#)  
 Tire tread [185](#)  
 Tone, refer to Integrated  
 Owner's Manual  
 Tools [202](#)  
 Total vehicle weight [227](#)  
 Touchpad [21](#)  
 Tow fitting [218](#)  
 Towing [216](#)  
 Tow-starting [216](#)  
 TPM Tire Pressure Moni-  
 tor [102](#)  
 Traction control [116](#)  
 TRACTION drive mode, driving  
 dynamics [116](#)  
 Transmission lock, releasing  
 manually [73](#)  
 Transmission, manual trans-  
 mission [71](#)  
 Transmission, see Steptronic  
 transmission [71](#)  
 Transporting children  
 safely [58](#)  
 Tread, tires [185](#)  
 Triple turn signal activa-  
 tion [67](#)  
 Trip odometer [80](#)  
 Trip on-board computer [86](#)  
 Trip recorder, see Trip odome-  
 ter [80](#)  
 Turning circle lines, rearview  
 camera [131](#)  
 Turn signal, front [204](#)

Turn signal, side [209](#)  
 Turn signals, operation [67](#)  
 Turn signals, rear, bulb re-  
 placement [206](#)

## U

Unintentional alarm [44](#)  
 Units of measurement [88](#)  
 Universal remote control [143](#)  
 Unlock button, Steptronic  
 transmission [72](#)  
 Unlocking/locking via door  
 lock [39](#)  
 Unlocking/locking with re-  
 mote control [37](#)  
 Unlocking, settings [42](#)  
 Updates made after the edito-  
 rial deadline [7](#)  
 Upholstery care [222](#)  
 USB interface [148](#)

## V

Vanity mirror [147](#)  
 Vehicle battery [212](#)  
 Vehicle battery, replacing [212](#)  
 Vehicle, break-in [158](#)  
 Vehicle care [221](#)  
 Vehicle features and op-  
 tions [6](#)  
 Vehicle identification num-  
 ber [10](#)  
 Vehicle jack [210](#)  
 Vehicle paint [221](#)  
 Vehicle storage [223](#)  
 Vehicle wash [220](#)  
 Ventilation [141](#)  
 Ventilation, refer to Parked-  
 car ventilation [141](#)  
 VIN, see vehicle identification  
 number [10](#)  
 Voice activation system [26](#)

**W**

Warning and indicator lamps,  
see Check Control [76](#)

Warning displays, see Check  
Control [76](#)

Warning messages, see Check  
Control [76](#)

Warning triangle [214](#)

Warranty [7](#)

Washer fluid [70](#)

Washing, vehicle [220](#)

Water on roads [159](#)

Weights [227](#)

Welcome lamps during un-  
locking [37](#)

Welcome lights [95](#)

Wheels, changing [186](#)

Wheels, everything on wheels  
and tires [178](#)

Wheels, Flat Tire Monitor  
FTM [106](#)

Wheels, Tire Pressure Monitor  
TPM [102](#)

Window defroster,  
rear [138](#), [140](#)

Windows, powered [44](#)

Windshield cleaning sys-  
tem [68](#)

Windshield de-  
froster [138](#), [140](#)

Windshield washer fluid [70](#)

Windshield wipers, fold-out  
position [70](#)

Windshield wipers, see wiper  
system [68](#)

Winter storage, care [223](#)

Winter tires, suitable tires [187](#)

Winter tires, tread [185](#)

Wiper blades, replacing [202](#)

Wiper fluid [70](#)

Wiper system [68](#)

Wood, care [222](#)

Word match concept, naviga-  
tion [25](#)

Wrench [202](#)





01 40 2 963 334 ue

**DRIVE ME.**

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 963 334 - VI/15